

## page 5

- 1.1 **gelada** (n) /gəl'ada/  
a rare species of monkey native to Ethiopia  
• *Unlike other monkeys, geladas spend most of their time eating grass in the meadows of Ethiopia.*
- 1.2 **bare** (v) /beə(r)/  
uncover sth so that it is visible • *The burglar took to his heels when the large family dog bared its teeth and growled at him.*  
➤ bareness (n), bare (adj), barely (adv)

## Reading

## pages 6-7

- 1.3 **interaction** (n) /,ɪntər'ækʃn/  
the act of communicating with or reacting to others • *Teachers are under pressure to create positive interactions between local children and immigrant students.* ➤ interact (v), interactive (adj), interactively (adv)
- 1.4 **individual** (n) /,ɪndɪ'vɪdʒuəl/  
a particular person who behaves in a unique way • *Our genetic code is what makes us all individuals so no two people are quite the same.* ➤ individuality (n), individually (adv)
- 1.5 **unknown (to sb)** (adv) /,ʌnbɪ'nəʊn tu: 'sʌmbədi/  
without sb knowing • *Unknown to us, the boss had heard our entire conversation.*
- 1.6 **sustain** (v) /sə'steɪn/  
experience or suffer sth unpleasant • *Lance sustained a severe leg injury when he fell off his bike.* ➤ sustainability (n), sustainable (adj)
- 1.7 **neuroscience** (n) /'njuərəʊsaɪəns/  
the science of studying the brain and nervous system • *As research methods in neuroscience develop, there is more evidence to explain how people experience different emotions.* ➤ neuroscientist (n)
- 1.8 **miraculous** (adj) /mɪ'rækjələs/  
extraordinary and unexpected • *The patient made a miraculous recovery and was back to work long before anyone expected.* ➤ miracle (n), miraculously (adv)
- 1.9 **foreman** (n) /'fɔ:mən/  
a worker who is responsible for leading a group of other workers, especially in construction or factory work • *The factory foreman told the workers to take a break while the machines were being serviced.*
- 1.10 **dynamite** (n) /'daɪnəmaɪt/  
a highly explosive substance • *Several sticks of dynamite were used to blow up the old block of flats.* ➤ dynamite (v)
- 1.11 **blast** (v) /blɑ:st/  
destroy sth by using explosives • *The explosion had blasted a hole in the side of the building.* ➤ blast (n)
- 1.12 **rod** (n) /rɒd/  
a long thin straight pole • *Ted lost his balance and fell off the ladder when he was putting up the new curtains on the rod.*
- 1.13 **compact** (v) /kəm'pækt/  
compress the parts of sth closely together into a more solid state or into a smaller space  
• *After the household waste is collected, it is compacted into large blocks to take up less space.* ➤ compact (n), compact (adj)
- 1.14 **ignite** (v) /ɪg'naɪt/  
cause sth to start burning • *The heat of the sun through broken glass can be enough to ignite dry grass and cause a wildfire.*  
➤ ignition (n)
- 1.15 **subsequent** (adj) /'sʌbsɪkwənt/  
coming after sth else • *The cause of the accident was unknown until the subsequent enquiry was conducted.* ➤ subsequently (adv)
- 1.16 **propel** (v) /prə'pel/  
push sth/sb forward usually causing rapid movement • *The strong current propelled the raft towards the rocks.* ➤ propeller (n), propellant (n), propulsion (n)
- 1.17 **exit** (v) /'eksɪt/  
leave; go out • *James exited the room without saying goodbye.* ➤ exit (n)
- 1.18 **skull** (n) /skʌl/  
the bone that gives structure to the head and protects the brain • *Wearing a motorcycle helmet reduces the risk of injury to the skull in the event of an accident.*
- 1.19 **against all odds** (expr)  
/ə'genst ɔ:l ɒdz/  
despite seeming impossible • *Against all odds, the climbing team made it to the top of K2.*
- 1.20 **initially** (adv) /ɪ'nɪʃəli/  
at first • *Paul's parents were initially surprised at his decision to leave home, but they soon came round to the idea.* ➤ initial (n), initial (adj)
- 1.21 **semicomatose** (adj)  
/'semi 'kəʊmətəʊs/  
almost unconscious • *Gwen was still semicomatose when we saw her after her operation, so she didn't seem to realise where she was.*

- 1.22 physically** (adv) /'fɪzɪkli/  
involving the body rather than the mind  
• *Robin still found cycling physically challenging months after breaking his ankle.*  
➤ physical (adj)
- 1.23 mentally** (adv) /'mentəli/  
involving the mind rather than the body  
• *Solving crosswords and other puzzles can be mentally stimulating.* ➤ mentality (n), mental (adj)
- 1.24 inappropriate** (adj) /,ɪnə'prəʊpriət/  
not suitable • *I hadn't realised it would be a formal dinner, so my jeans and T-shirt were quite inappropriate for the occasion.*  
➤ inappropriateness (n), inappropriately (adv)
- 1.25 acquaintance** (n) /ə'kweɪntəns/  
sb you know but are not close friends with  
• *Laura has a large number of acquaintances on social media sites, most of whom she has never met personally.* ➤ acquaint (v)
- 1.26 hold down** (phr v) /həʊld daʊn/  
manage to keep a job • *John had difficulty in holding down two jobs at once as he was utterly exhausted.*
- 1.27 epileptic** (adj) /,epɪ'leptɪk/  
related to epilepsy, an illness affecting the brain • *Tom became epileptic as a result of a head injury.* ➤ epilepsy (n)
- 1.28 seizure** (n) /'si:ʒə(r)/  
an attack of an illness that strikes suddenly  
• *Aunt Hilda was admitted to hospital after her heart seizure.* ➤ seize (v)
- 1.29 post-traumatic** (adj) /,pəʊst.trɔ:ˌmæt.ɪk/  
as a result of a serious shock or injury, especially to the brain • *Naser suffered from post-traumatic stress after his town was bombed.*
- 1.30 disinhibition** (n) /,dɪsɪnhɪ'bɪʃn/  
the state of having no feeling of embarrassment or shyness to restrict behaviour • *Certain drugs, which have caused people to experience sudden social disinhibition and lead to self-destructive behaviour, are banned in Australia.*  
➤ disinhibit (v)  
📖 Opp: inhibition
- 1.31 frontal lobe** (n) /'frʌŋ.təl ləʊb/  
one of the two parts of the brain which control behaviour, personality, etc. • *In the past, mental illness was treated by removing all or part of the frontal lobes.* ➤ lobotomy (n), lobotomise (v)
- 1.32 cognitive** (adj) /'kɒgnətɪv/  
related to the processes of thinking and understanding • *It's amazing how children's cognitive development varies according to their upbringing.*
- 1.33 inhibit** (v) /ɪn'hɪbɪt/  
restrict sb's actions by causing them to feel shy or embarrassed • *Students felt that their new teacher inhibited them from learning with her strict manner.* ➤ inhibition (n)
- 1.34 self-awareness** (n) /self ə'veənəs/  
a sense of understanding your own behaviour and who you are • *Watching how you behave on video can lead to a greater sense of self-awareness.* ➤ self-aware (adj)
- 1.35 solid** (adj) /'sɒlɪd/  
certain • *Though Ken was the prime suspect in the murder investigation, the police had no solid proof to arrest him.* ➤ solidify (v), solidly (adv)
- 1.36 trauma** (n) /'trɔ:mə/  
the effect of a serious shock or injury, especially on the brain • *Alex needed the help of a psychologist to help him through the trauma of his parents' divorce.* ➤ traumatise (v), traumatic (adj), traumatically (adv)
- 1.37 introductory** (adj) /,ɪntrə'dʌktəri/  
intended to introduce you to a subject or activity • *The college offers a range of short introductory courses for foreign students.*  
➤ introduce (v), introduction (n)
- 1.38 sought-out** (adj) /sɔ:t aʊt/  
desired; wanted • *The most sought-out paintings fetched a good price at the auction.*  
➤ seek (v), seeker (n)
- 1.39 ground-breaking** (adj) /'graʊndbreɪkɪŋ/  
making a new and important discovery  
• *Before the ground-breaking discovery of antibiotics, people used to die from infections that are now curable.* ➤ groundbreaker (n)  
📖 Also: groundbreaking
- 1.40 temperament** (n) /'temprəmənt/  
your manner of behaving or reacting towards others • *Lucy's calm temperament makes her an ideal school counsellor.* ➤ temperamental (adj), temperamentally (adv)
- 1.41 track** (v) /træk/  
follow the progress of sth/sb • *Our tutor gives us monthly tests to track our academic progress.* ➤ tracker (n)
- 1.42 well-being** (n) /wel 'bi:ɪŋ/  
the state of good physical and psychological health • *Having enough sleep is as important as diet and exercise for your overall well-being.*
- 1.43 infancy** (n) /'ɪnfənsi/  
the stage of life from birth to early childhood  
• *Children's psychological development depends greatly on the stimulus they receive during their infancy.* ➤ infant (n), infantile (adj)

- 1.44 invaluable** (adj) /ɪnˈvæljuəbl/  
very useful • *The internet has become such an invaluable source of information that we now feel quite deprived if we cannot get online.*  
➤ value (v), value (n)

### Mind and Body

Nouns	Adjectives
adolescence	adolescent
contagion	epileptic
frontal lobe	innate
gesture	post-traumatic
infancy	semicomatose
neuroscience	physically
posture	mentally
seizure	cognitive
skull	
trauma	
well-being	

- 1.45 intricate** (adj) /ˈɪntrɪkət/  
finely-detailed and complex • *The neutral shade of the curtains went well with the intricate floral pattern of the carpet.*  
➤ intricacy (n), intricately (adv)
- 1.46 mosaic** (n) /məʊˈzeɪɪk/  
a pattern or image made with many small parts put together • *The path leading to the mansion was a mosaic of broken tiles and pebbles.*  
➤ mosaic (adj)
- 1.47 keenly** (adv) /ˈkiːnli/  
enthusiastically; deeply • *Visitors to the zoo keenly observed the young panda's behaviour.*  
➤ keenness (v), keen (adj)
- 1.48 devoted** (adj) /dɪˈvəʊtɪd/  
completely loyal and loving • *Barbara is utterly devoted to her grandchildren and adores spending time with them.* ➤ devote (v), devotion (n), devotee (n), devotedly (adv)
- 1.49 optimal** (adj) /ˈɒptɪməl/  
to the maximum or best possible extent • *The car reaches its optimal fuel efficiency at an average speed of around 50 miles per hour.*  
➤ optimum (adj)
- 1.50 attribute** (n) /ˈætrɪbjʊːt/  
a quality or characteristic • *Modesty is one of Malcolm's greatest attributes as he's rather quiet about his own successes.* ➤ attribute (v), attributable (adj)
- 1.51 ethically** (adv) /ˈeθɪkli/  
in a morally acceptable way • *In some cultures, it is considered ethically correct to eat certain insects.* ➤ ethic (n), ethical (adj)

- 1.52 empathetic** (adj) /,em,pəˈθet,ɪk/  
showing understanding for sb's feelings  
• *Good teachers have to be both patient and empathetic towards their students' needs.*  
➤ empathise (v), empathy (n), empathetically (adv)
- 1.53 determinant** (n) /dɪˈtɜːmɪnənt/  
a deciding factor • *Qualifications may not be the sole determinant in securing a job, but they can give you an advantage over other candidates.* ➤ determine (v), determined (adj), determining (adj)
- 1.54 adolescent** (n) /,ædəˈlesnt/  
a teenager; sb going through the stage of life between childhood and adulthood • *Ms Jones refused to take her class on a three-day excursion as she did not wish to be held responsible for a group of adolescents.*  
➤ adolescence (n), adolescent (adj)
- 1.55 adolescence** (n) /,ædəˈlesns/  
the stage of life between childhood and adulthood • *Teenagers go through major physical and emotional changes during adolescence.* ➤ adolescent (n), adolescent (adj)
- 1.56 peer** (n) /pɪə(r)/  
sb of the same age or in the same social position as another • *Sophie gets along well with most of her peers in her class at college.*
- 1.57 flourish** (v) /ˈflaʊɪʃ/  
develop and do well • *Andrew's self-confidence began to flourish when his parents sent him to music school.*  
📌 Syn: thrive
- 1.58 limitations** (n) /,lɪmɪˈteɪʃnz/  
sth that limits sb/sth from achieving more or being better • *It isn't a bad camera, but it has its limitations in close-up photography.*  
➤ limit (v), limit (n), limited (adj)
- 1.59 infer** (v) /ɪnˈfɜː(r)/  
make an educated guess or develop an opinion about sth based on the information given • *From the author's overall tone, we can infer that she must have had a difficult childhood.* ➤ inference (n)
- 1.60 fascination** (n) /,fæsɪˈneɪʃn/  
a strong interest in sth • *Thelma's fascination with archaeology led her to write a book on Minoan art.* ➤ fascinate (v), fascinated (adj), fascinating (adj)
- 1.61 baffle** (v) /ˈbæfl/  
confuse • *Grace's decision to resign from her comfortable job completely baffled her colleagues.* ➤ baffling (adj)



- 1.62 troubled** (adj) /'trʌblɪd/  
worried • *I knew all was not well when I saw Tom's troubled expression.* > trouble (v), trouble (n), troublesome (adj)
- 1.63 authority** (n) /ɔ:'θɒrəti/  
the power to make decisions and tell others how to behave • *My neighbours appear to have no authority over their kids, who are unacceptably noisy.* > authorise (v), authoritative (adj), authoritative (adv)
- 1.64 eliminate** (v) /ɪ'limineɪt/  
rule out; remove • *John is likely to win the singing contest as the judges have eliminated most of the other contestants.* > elimination (n)
- 1.65 encompass** (v) /ɪn'kʌmpəs/  
include • *Make sure your essay encompasses all the relevant points.*
- 1.66 multitude** (n) /'mʌltɪtju:d/  
large number of people or things together • *There are a multitude of expressions to describe different types of human behaviour.* > multitudinous (adj)
- 1.67 interrelated** (adj) /,ɪntərɪ'leɪtɪd/  
connected together; bearing a relation to each other • *Our states of physical and emotional health are closely interrelated.* > interrelate (v), interrelationship (n)

## Vocabulary pages 8-9-10

- 1.68 misspent** (adj) /,mɪs'spent/  
used in a careless or wasteful way • *Despite her misspent teenage years when she hardly studied at all, Elaine passed her university degree with flying colours.* > misspend (v)
- 1.69 pleasurable** (adj) /'pleʒərəbl/  
enjoyable • *My holiday at the spa was a most pleasurable experience which left me feeling refreshed and relaxed.* > please (v), pleasure (n), pleasurably (adv)
- 1.70 dysfunctional** (adj) /dɪs'fʌŋkʃənəl/  
not functioning normally • *Dysfunctional relationships between couples are generally due to incompatible interests and desires.* > dysfunction (n)
- 1.71 neglect** (n) /nɪ'glekt/  
lack of care or attention • *In the UK, parents who leave underage children alone at home can be imprisoned for child neglect.* > neglect (v), neglected (adj)
- 1.72 maladjusted** (adj) /,mælə'dʒʌstɪd/  
with emotional problems that prevent sb behaving in a socially acceptable way • *Those who bully others often tend to be maladjusted as a result of their upbringing.* > maladjustment (n)
- 1.73 at a loss** (expr) /æt ə lɒs/  
not knowing what to say • *Roxanne was at a loss to explain why her husband had left her.*
- 1.74 aberrant** (adj) /æ'berənt/  
antisocial • *Mike was expelled from school as a result of his repeated aberrant behaviour in class.* > aberration (n)
- 1.75 abnormal** (adj) /æb'nɔ:ml/  
not normal; unnatural • *Having lost an abnormal amount of weight during her illness, Ellen is on a special diet to regain her strength.* > abnormality (n), abnormally (adv)
- 1.76 misanthrope** (n) /'mɪsənθrəʊp/  
sb who does not like other people and avoids human company • *Although Sue enjoys spending time alone with her books, it doesn't mean that she's a complete misanthrope; she actually has a wide circle of friends.* > misanthropy (n), misanthropic (adj)
- 1.77 adamant** (adj) /'ædəmənt/  
having a fixed opinion about sth • *The parliamentary spokesperson was adamant that the tax increases were justified and no amount of public protest would change the decision.* > adamantly (adv)
- 1.78 cynical** (adj) /'sɪnɪkl/  
not believing that sth is done for good or unselfish reasons; negatively thinking • *Stop being so cynical! You have just as much chance of getting the job as anyone else.* > cynic (n), cynicism (n), cynically (adv)
- 1.79 inflexible** (adj) /ɪn'fleksəbl/  
not willing to change your mind; difficult to change or bend • *Colin's inflexible attitude towards his teenage daughter made her want to leave home.* > inflexibility (n), inflexibly (adv)
- 1.80 obstinate** (adj) /'ɒbstɪnət/  
stubborn; sticking to your opinion • *Jane is so obstinate that she refuses to follow her parents' advice.* > obstinacy (n), obstinately (adv)
- 1.81 elated** (adj) /ɪ'leɪtɪd/  
joyful and very excited • *We were elated at the referee's decision to award our team a penalty.* > elation (n)
- 1.82 jubilant** (adj) /'dʒu:bɪlənt/  
very happy because of a successful result • *The jubilant fans cheered loudly after the final whistle.* > jubilation (n), jubilantly (adv)
- 1.83 overjoyed** (adj) /,əʊvə'dʒɔɪd/  
extremely pleased • *Irene's grandmother was overjoyed to see her when she returned from Canada.*
- 1.84 meticulous** (adj) /mə'tɪkjələs/  
with great attention to detail; thorough • *Lynne keeps a meticulous record of the company accounts.* > meticulously (adv)

- 1.85 apathetic** (adj) /ˌæpəˈθetɪk/  
lacking interest or unwilling to take action • *If voters hadn't been so apathetic, there would have been a better turnout for the election.*  
➤ apathy (n), apathetically (adv)
- 1.86 dispassionate** (adj) /dɪsˈpæʃənəti/  
clear-thinking because of lack of emotional involvement • *To a dispassionate observer, United clearly did not deserve to win, though the fans would never admit it.*  
➤ dispassionately (adv)
- 1.87 uneasy** (adj) /ʌnˈiːzi/  
worried or unconfident • *They had an uneasy feeling that they were being followed.*  
➤ uneasiness (n), uneasily (adv)
- 1.88 withdrawn** (adj) /wɪðˈdrɔːn/  
quiet and introverted; not outgoing • *Mabel had become even more shy and withdrawn as she found it hard to fit in at her new school.*  
➤ withdraw (v)
- 1.89 compulsive** (adj) /kəmˈpʌlsɪv/  
unable to stop doing sth • *Nobody takes Bill seriously since he's known to be a compulsive liar.* ➤ compulsion (n), compulsively (adv)
- 1.90 neurotic** (adj) /njʊəˈrɒtɪk/  
behaving nervously or unreasonably • *Mr Templar became neurotic about home security after the burglary and had cameras fitted in every room.* ➤ neurosis (n), neurotically (adv)
- 1.91 obsessive** (adj) /əbˈsesɪv/  
focussed on one person or thing to an abnormal extent • *Greg has become so obsessive about his new project that he never has time for his friends or family.* ➤ obsess (v), obsession (n), obsessively (adv)
- 1.92 obnoxious** (adj) /əbˈnɒkʃəs/  
horrible; offensive • *What an obnoxious manner he has! It's small wonder he has no friends.* ➤ obnoxiously (adv)
- 1.93 amiable** (adj) /ˈeɪmiəbl/  
likeable; good-natured • *Ian took his clients out to dinner to create a more amiable atmosphere for discussion.* ➤ amiability (n), amiably (adv)
- 1.94 impassive** (adj) /ɪmˈpæssɪv/  
showing no sign of emotion • *From her impassive expression, you can never tell what our teacher is thinking.* ➤ impassively (adv)
- 1.95 poised** (adj) /pɔɪzd/  
with a calm and confident manner; not moving but ready to do so • *The cat stood poised for action as she waited for the bird to land on the lawn.* ➤ poise (v), poise (n)
- 1.96 serene** (adj) /səˈriːn/  
peaceful and not worried • *The serene smile on Da Vinci's Mona Lisa has become legendary.* ➤ serenity (n), serenely (adv)
- 1.97 eloquent** (adj) /ˈeləkwənt/  
able to express opinions well in a clear and confident way, especially in public • *The most eloquent speaker was chosen to represent the team in the debate.* ➤ eloquence (n), eloquently (adv)
- 1.98 principled** (adj) /ˈprɪnsəpld/  
having strong moral beliefs • *Beth has a principled approach towards helping students who cannot afford to pay fees.* ➤ principle (n)  
📌 Opp: unprincipled
- 1.99 scrupulous** (adj) /ˈskruːpjələs/  
honest; giving careful attention to detail • *The detectives made a scrupulous search of the crime scene.* ➤ scruple (v), scruple (n), scrupulously (adv)  
📌 Opp: unscrupulous
- 1.100 upright** (adj) /ˈʌpraɪt/  
behaving honestly and ethically • *I couldn't believe such an apparently upright citizen could have committed murder.* ➤ upright (n), upright (adv)
- 1.101 distrustful** (adj) /dɪsˈtrʌstfl/  
not trusting sb/sth easily • *Granddad is extremely distrustful of all politicians.*  
➤ distrust (v), distrust (n)
- 1.102 arouse** (v) /əˈraʊz/  
excite or awaken particular feelings in sb • *The referendum aroused a great deal of disagreement even between friends.*  
➤ arousal (n), arousing (adj)
- 1.103 assert** (v) /əˈsɜːt/  
state confidently • *After his arrest, the prisoner asserted his right to call a lawyer.* ➤ assertion (n), assertive (adj), assertively (adv)
- 1.104 grudge** (n) /grʌdʒ/  
a bad feeling or strong dislike for sb because of sth they did in the past • *You beat me fair and square in the tennis match, so I bear no grudge against you.* ➤ grudge (v), grudging (adj), grudgingly (adv)
- 1.105 breed** (v) /briːd/  
cause sth to happen • *Tina's promotion bred a feeling of resentment amongst her colleagues, who had also applied for the position.* ➤ breed (n)
- 1.106 conduct yourself** (v) /kənˈdʌkt ʃɔːself/  
behave in a certain way • *The sales assistant conducted herself in a highly unprofessional manner when she lost her temper with the customer.* ➤ conduct (n)
- 1.107 exert** (v) /ɪgˈzɜːt/  
use effort, such as strength or influence to achieve a result • *Parents often exert too much pressure on their children to achieve success from an early age.* ➤ exertion (n)

- 1.108 swallow (sth)** (v) /'swɒləʊ 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
hold (sth) back; not reveal or express sth  
• *Linda tried to swallow her emotions as she broke the bad news to her friend.*  
➤ swallow (n)
- 1.109 vent** (v) /vent/  
express strongly • *Alex hit the ball hard into the net to vent his frustration at losing the match.* ➤ vent (n)
- 1.110 familiarity** (n) /fə'mɪli'ærəti/  
the feeling of closeness through knowing sth/sb well • *He felt a sense of familiarity as he approached his birthplace for the first time in 20 years.* ➤ familiarise (v), familiar (adj)
- 1.111 contempt** (n) /kən'tempt/  
the feeling of looking down on or showing disrespect for sb/sth you believe to be inferior  
• *The islanders viewed the boatloads of immigrants with contempt and suspicion at first.* ➤ contemptible (adj), contemptuous (adj), contemptibly (adv), contemptuously (adv)
- 1.112 appallingly** (adv) /ə'pɔːlɪŋli/  
in a shocking way • *The court case was appallingly handled; the verdict was so unfair!*  
➤ appal (v), appalled (adj), appalling (adj)
- 1.113 peer pressure** (n) /piə(r) 'preʃə(r)/  
the pressure from people your own age or social status to do the same as they do so as to be accepted • *Tracy dresses exactly as she pleases and refuses to give in to peer pressure to wear certain brands of clothing.*
- 1.114 gullible** (adj) /'gʌləbl/  
easy to deceive; liable to believe what other say without question • *How could you be so gullible as to buy that old heap of a car?*  
➤ gullibility (n)
- 1.115 vulnerable** (adj) /'vʌlnərəbl/  
easy to hurt or damage emotionally or physically • *Adolescents are particularly vulnerable to criticism from their peers.*  
➤ vulnerability (n)
- 1.116 distant** (adj) /'dɪstənt/  
related by family, but not closely • *I have a distant cousin – possibly a granddaughter of my grandma's cousin – living somewhere in this area, but we've never managed to meet yet.* ➤ distance (v), distance (n), distantly (adv)
- 1.117 reciprocal** (adj) /rɪ'sɪprəkl/  
that is done or given by both people involved; mutual • *The ceasefire took place under a reciprocal agreement.* ➤ reciprocate (v), reciprocally (adv)
- 1.118 companionable** (adj) /kəm'pæniənəbl/  
friendly and good to be in the company of  
• *My uncle is a companionable character, who is always the life and soul of the party.*  
➤ companion (n), company (n), companionship (n)
- 1.119 compatible** (adj) /kəm'pætəbl/  
able to get on well together through having similar or matching characteristics or interests and needs • *Our musical tastes are not compatible as I really can't stand jazz.*  
➤ compatibility (n), compatibly (adv)  
🔑 Opp: incompatible
- 1.120 inseparable** (adj) /ɪn'seprəbl/  
that can't be separated; having a very friendly close relationship • *Nancy and Robert have been absolutely inseparable from the year they met.* ➤ inseparably (adv)
- 1.121 philosophical** (adj) /,fɪlə'sɒfɪkl/  
accepting a negative situation with a calm, understanding reaction • *Mum was quite philosophical about losing her job as she said she might now consider starting her own business.* ➤ philosophy (n), philosopher (n), philosophically (adv)
- 1.122 platonic** (adj) /plə'tɒnɪk/  
having a friendly, but not sexual relationship  
• *Steve insists that his friendship with Margo is purely platonic and they aren't romantically involved.*
- 1.123 condition** (v) /kən'dɪʃn/  
train a person or animal to behave in a particular way or accept sth • *Army recruits are conditioned to follow orders from their superiors.* ➤ conditioning (n), conditioned (adj)
- 1.124 unconditional** (adj) /,ʌnkən'dɪʃənəl/  
unlimited; without expecting sth in return  
• *Fiona is a true friend who is always prepared to offer unconditional help whenever necessary.* ➤ unconditionally (adv)

### Positive adjectives

amiable	outright
companionable	overjoyed
compatible	philosophical
devoted	platonic
dispassionate	pleasurable
elated	poised
eloquent	principled
empathetic	reciprocal
ground-breaking	scrupulous
inseparable	serene
intricate	solid
invaluable	sought-out
jubilant	tender
meticulous	unconditional
miraculous	upright
non-confrontational	withdrawn
optimal	



- 1.125 come between** (phr v) /kʌm brɪ'twiːn/ cause to separate; harm a relationship  
 • *They've been utterly devoted to each other for years and nothing can come between them.*
- 1.126 drift apart** (phr v) /drɪft ə'pɑːt/ gradually become less friendly with sb • *We were best friends at school, but we drifted apart over the years when we went off to study at different universities.* > drift (n), drifter (n)
- 1.127 fit in** (phr v) /fɪt/ feel accepted and have a sense of belonging in a group, team, etc. • *Language and cultural barriers made it hard for Omar to fit in with Greek society.*
- 1.128 go back** (phr v) /gəʊ bæk/ know each other from a time in the past  
 • *Angela and I go back 15 years; we used to work together.*
- 1.129 lead (sb) on** (phr v) /liːd 'sʌmbədi ɒn/ make sb believe an untrue situation  
 • *The caller had no intention of buying my bike; he was just leading me on to gain personal information about where I live.*
- 1.130 settle down** (phr v) /'setl daʊn/ stop moving around and start living in one place to develop a steady lifestyle • *After years of working on cargo ships, Paul found it difficult to settle down and live in a city apartment.* > settler (n), settled (adj)
- 1.131 stick up for** (phr v) /stɪk ʌp fə(r)/ support sb/sth • *Liz always sticks up for her little brother if he gets into trouble in the school playground.*
- 1.132 work up** (phr v) /wɜːk ʌp/ cause a feeling or idea to develop • *Vince held an exhibition of his artwork to work up some interest from potential customers.*
- 1.133 do sb's head in** (expr) /duː 'sʌmbədiz hed ɪn/ annoy or confuse sb intensely • *Please turn off that music! It's doing my head in and I can't concentrate.*
- 1.134 urge** (v) /ɜːdʒ/ encourage or strongly advise sb to do sth  
 • *Jeff wanted to study art, but his parents were urging him to leave school and get a job to earn a living.* > urge (n), urging (n), urgent (adj)
- 1.135 egg (sb) on** (phr v) /eg 'sʌmbədi ɒn/ encourage or provoke sb to do sth • *As the boys egged each other on to dive off the high rocks into the sea, two of them ended up in hospital.*
- 1.136 tease** (v) /tiːz/ make fun of sb in a friendly way as a joke, or to embarrass them • *Patrick got used to being teased about his red hair and freckled complexion as a child.* > tease (n), teaser (n)
- 1.137 wind (sb) up** (phr v) /waɪnd 'sʌmbədi ʌp/ annoy sb; say sth that is not true to annoy sb  
 • *Don't take George seriously; he's just winding you up.* > wind-up (n), wound-up (adj)
- 1.138 stress (sb) out** (phr v) /stres 'sʌmbədi aʊt/ cause sb to feel very anxious • *The pressure of studying for exams was stressing him out completely.* > stressed-out (adj)
- 1.139 put sb down** (phr v) /pʊt 'sʌmbədi daʊn/ make sb feel inferior or stupid • *Not having strong enough policies of their own, the electoral candidates resorted to putting each other down in the debate.* > put-down (n)
- 1.140 slap** (n) /slæp/ a hit with an open hand • *Fred gave his friend a friendly slap on the back.* > slap (v)
- 1.141 a slap in the face** (expr) /slæp ɪn ðə feɪs/ an insulting or disappointing action or event  
 • *It was a real slap in the face for Rita when she got turned down for promotion after all her hard work.*
- 1.142 ego** (n) /'iːgəʊ/ the sense of self worth • *Getting elected as class president was a boost for Diana's ego since she was actually quite shy.* > egotist (n), egoism (n), egotistic (adj)
- 1.143 at arm's length** (expr) /ət ɑːmz lɛŋθ/ at a safe distance • *Tracy keeps her neighbours at arm's length as she prefer to keep her personal business private.*
- 1.144 have a chip on your shoulder** (expr) /hæv ə tʃɪp ɒn ʃɔː(r) 'ʃəʊldə(r)/ feel easily offended about sth because of a past experience • *As Morag is from Inverness, she has a chip on her shoulder about being called English.*
- 1.145 confide in** (phr v) /kən'faɪd ɪn/ trust sb with your private thoughts or problems  
 • *Do you confide your secrets to a friend or family member?* > confidence (n), confidential (adj), confidentially (adv)
- 1.146 get sth off your chest** (expr) /get 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf ʃɔː(r) tʃest/ reveal what is worrying you; talk openly about a problem • *What's up with you? I'm all ears if it would help to get it off your chest.*
- 1.147 keep a cool head** (expr) /kiːp ə kuːl hed/ remain calm • *Don't worry so much about your interview; just keep a cool head and do your best.*
- 1.148 behind sb's back** (expr) /bɪ'haɪnd 'sʌmbədiz bæk/ without sb knowing or against their wishes  
 • *Carol fell out with her colleague when she found out he'd been talking about her behind her back.*

- 1.149 bite your tongue** (expr) /baɪt ʤɔː(r) tʌŋ/  
hold yourself back from saying sth that might upset sb • *I knew my teacher had made a mistake, but I didn't know whether to tell her or just bite my tongue.*
- 1.150 put your foot in it** (expr) /pʊt ʤɔː(r) fʊt ɪn ɪt/  
say sth inappropriate in a certain situation that upsets sb • *It was supposed to be a surprise party. You've really put your foot in it now!*
- 1.151 give sb the elbow** (expr) /gɪv 'sʌmbədi ðə 'elbəʊ/  
reject sb; tell sb to leave because they are no longer needed or wanted • *Harry gave his so-called friend the elbow when he realised he'd been using him to advance his own career.*

### Body-related expressions

a slap in the face	give sb the elbow
at arm's length	have a chip on your shoulder
at heart	
behind sb's back	keep a cool head
bite your tongue	put your foot in it
do sb's head in	rear its (ugly) head
get sth off your chest	

- 1.152 a pain in the neck** (expr) /ə peɪn ɪn ðə nek/  
an annoyance • *My little sister is always trying to listen in on my phone calls; she can be a real pain in the neck at times.*
- 1.153 be in tune with** (expr) /bi ɪn tjuː wɪθ/  
have the same ideas as sb; accord with sb's way of thinking • *Jack isn't quite in tune with the rest of the staff as he's a bit of a loner and prefers to do his own thing.*
- 1.154 be beside yourself** (expr) /bi bɪ'saɪd ʤɔː'self/  
be overcome by an emotion • *Dad was beside himself with happiness when I told him I'd got my scholarship.*
- 1.155 be on good terms** (expr) /bi ɒn gʊd tɜːmz/  
have a friendly relationship • *Jerry is an amicable student who is on good terms with most of his teachers.*
- 1.156 be in sb's bad books** (expr) /bi ɪn 'sʌmbədɪz bæd bʊks/  
be out of favour with sb because of having done sth to displease them • *Nick had another argument with the boss, so he's in her bad books again.*
- 1.157 at heart** (expr) /ət hɑːt/  
essentially, sometimes underneath an outward appearance • *Debbie can sound abrupt over the phone despite being a warm and friendly person at heart.*

- 1.158 be on the same wavelength** (expr) /bi ɒn ðə seɪm 'weɪvlɛŋθ/  
have similar ideas; share the same opinion • *We're on the same wavelength when it comes to animal welfare as neither of us can stand seeing animals suffer.*
- 1.159 against your will** (expr) /ə'genst ʤɔː(r) wɪl/  
although you don't want to do so • *Stuart had to leave the country against his will when his visitor's permit expired.*
- 1.160 in a rut** (expr) /ɪn ə rʌt/  
in a routine (often boring) situation that is hard to change • *I wish I could find a more exciting job instead of being stuck in a rut as a bank clerk.*
- 1.161 on cloud nine** (expr) /ɒn klaʊd naɪn/  
extremely happy • *Tracy was on cloud nine when she heard the unexpected good news.*
- 1.162 at ease** (expr) /ət iːz/  
confident and relaxed • *She is much too shy to feel at ease in the company of strangers.*
- 1.163 on edge** (expr) /ɒn edʒ/  
nervous; easily upset • *Most parents tend to be a bit on edge when they are unsure of their teenage children's whereabouts.*
- 1.164 out of character** (expr) /aʊt əv 'kærəktə(r)/  
in a way that is different from sb's usual personality • *How strange that Mandy lost her temper last night – it was so out of character!*
- 1.165 associate** (v) /ə'səʊʃieɪt/  
mentally link sth/sb with (sth/sb else); have a connection with • *Ian always associates Cornwall with his childhood memories of summer.* > association (n), associate (n), associated (adj)
- 1.166 attribute** (v) /ə'trɪbjʊt/  
say that sb/sth is the cause of sth • *Sam attributed his success in business to a lot of hard work and a little luck.* > attribute (n), attributable (adj)
- 1.167 clan** (n) /klæn/  
a large extended family group with a common surname • *My Scottish ancestors were members of the Gordon clan.* >
- 1.168 mob** (n) /mɒb/  
a large crowd of people who may behave violently • *An angry mob protested outside the town hall.* > mob (v)
- 1.169 clique** (n) /kliːk/  
a small close-knit group which excludes others • *I'm afraid the school students' committee has become a bit of a clique who are doing whatever they feel like whilst ignoring their classmates' views.* > cliquy (adj)



- 1.170 self-content** (n) /self 'kɒntent/  
the sense of being happy with the way you are • *Despite having lived in a city most of her life, Karen had a feeling of self-content settling down in her small country house.*  
➤ self-content (adj)
- 1.171 self-satisfaction** (n) /self, sætɪs'fækʃn/  
the sense of being pleased or satisfied with sth you have done • *Having received so much praise for her project, Kate felt a sense of self-satisfaction.* ➤ self-satisfied (adj)
- 1.172 self-esteem** (n) /self ɪ'stiːm/  
the sense of feeling valued or important • *Constant criticism from teachers and parents can lower a child's self-esteem.*
- 1.173 self-sufficiency** (n) /self sə'fɪnsi/  
the state of having enough resources without needing anything from others • *Moving to another country requires a great deal of self-sufficiency as it could be difficult to build support networks.* ➤ self-sufficient (adj)
- 1.174 back sb up** (phr v) /bæk 'sʌmbədi ʌp/  
say that what sb says is true • *Your alibi sounds unlikely. Is there any witness who can back you up?* ➤ back-up (n)
- 1.175 look sb up** (phr v) /lʊk 'sʌmbədi ʌp/  
contact or visit sb when you are in their area • *Next time you're in London, look me up and we can get together.*
- 1.176 crack sb up** (phr v) /kræk 'sʌmbədi ʌp/  
say sth that amuses sb very much • *Billy's live performance was so funny it cracked us all up. We couldn't stop laughing!*
- 1.177 outburst** (n) /'aʊtbʊːst/  
an unexpected expression of strong emotion • *The centre forward was sent off due to his outburst of violence during the match.*
- 1.178 prone (to)** (adj) /prəʊn (tə)/  
likely to do sth or suffer sth • *Our old teacher was prone to falling asleep in the middle of a exam.*
- 1.179 bitterly** (adv) /'bɪtəli/  
in an extremely bad way; acutely • *I was bitterly disappointed at his dreadful attitude.*  
➤ bitterness (n), bitter (adj)
- 1.180 steer clear of sb/sth** (expr) /stiə(r) kliə(r) əv'sʌmbədi/'sʌmθɪŋ/  
stay out of the way of sb/sth that might be problematic • *You'd better steer clear of Tommy; he's in a foul mood today.*
- 1.181 outsider** (n) /,aʊt'saɪdə(r)/  
sb who is not an accepted member of a community group • *Although Penny spends a month on the island every year, she is still regarded as an outsider as she is not a permanent resident.* ➤ outside (adj), outside (adv)

- 1.182 intruder** (n) /ɪn'truːdə(r)  
sb who enters a place illegally or when they are not wanted • *With three fierce guard dogs in pursuit, the intruders climbed swiftly back over the wall.* ➤ intrude (v), intrusion (n), intrusive (adj), intrusively (adv)
- 1.183 novice** (n) /'nɒvɪs/  
sb who is new to doing sth and has little experience • *Lia is a complete novice at playing the violin; she sounds terrible!*

### Phrasal verbs

back sb up	engage in sth	settle down
come	fit in	stick up for
between	go back	stress (sb)
confide in	hold down	out
crack sb up	lead (sb) on	wind (sb) up
drift apart	look sb up	work up
egg (sb) on	put sb down	

## Grammar

pages 11-12-13

- 1.184 gathering** (n) /'gæðərɪŋ/  
a meeting of people • *Greek name days are always a great excuse for a family gathering.*  
➤ gather (v), gatherer (n)
- 1.185 annoyance** (n) /ə'noɪəns/  
sth that is annoying; the feeling of being annoyed • *Olga could not hide her annoyance at the interruption.* ➤ annoy (v), annoying (adj), annoyingly (adv)

### Feelings

annoyance	self-content
contempt	self-esteem
disinhibition	self-satisfaction
distress	self-sufficiency
fascination	sorrow
self-awareness	

### Relationships & Groups

acquaintance	misanthrope
clan	mob
clique	outsider
gathering	peer
intruder	

## Listening

page 14

- 1.186 leave sb cold** (expr) /liːv 'sʌmbədi kəʊld/  
fail to arouse any interest or excitement for sb • *The idea of a night at the opera leaves Daniel cold.*

- 1.187 overwhelm** (v) /ˌəʊvə'welɪn/  
have an overpowering effect on • *Sarah was overwhelmed by the beauty of the island.*  
➤ overwhelming (adj), overwhelmingly (adv)
- 1.188 mistaken** (adj) /mɪ'steɪkən/  
incorrect in a belief; based on an incorrect belief or assumption • *I was under the mistaken impression that he came from a poor family.*  
➤ mistake (v), mistake (n), mistakenly (adv)
- 1.189 extrovert** (n) /'ekstrəvɜːt/  
an outgoing confident person • *Although Gary appears so confident when performing in the band, he's not such an extrovert and is rather shy offstage.* ➤ extroverted (adj)
- 1.190 introvert** (n) /'ɪntrəvɜːt/  
a quiet person who doesn't make friends easily • *Nigel prefers to express his thoughts in writing as he's too much of an introvert to speak up in public.* ➤ introverted (adj)
- 1.191 contagion** (n) /kən'teɪdʒən/  
the quick spread of sth, such as disease or a negative idea • *The sudden influx of immigrants has led to the contagion of racism throughout Europe.* ➤ contagious (adj), contagiously (adv)
- 1.192 convergence** (n) /kən'vɜːdʒəns/  
the action of two or more things meeting and joining together, then becoming similar • *The new Acropolis Museum is a prime example of the convergence of ancient and modern architecture.* ➤ converge (v), convergent (adj)
- 1.193 trait** (n) /treɪt/  
a characteristic • *Unfortunately, Simon had always been a fraud and honesty was not a trait of his character.*
- 1.194 conform** (v) /kən'fɔːm/  
behave according to the accepted rules of a society; be in agreement with or follow the same pattern as sth/sb • *Neil moved out of the university hall of residence in first year as he couldn't conform with the idea of communal living.* ➤ conformity (n)

## Behaviour

### Verbs

assert  
associate  
baffle  
breed  
captivate  
conform  
grudge  
infer  
overwhelm  
repulse  
ridicule  
tease  
urge

### Nouns

ego  
extrovert  
familiarity  
humanity  
interaction  
introvert  
neglect  
outburst  
peer pressure  
temperament  
trait

## Speaking

page 15

- 1.195 innate** (adj) /ɪ'neɪt/  
that you were born with • *Do you believe that musical talent is innate or is it learned?*  
➤ innately (adv)

## Writing

pages 16-17

- 1.196 discursive** (adj) /dɪ'skɜːsɪv/  
used to describe writing or spoken discussion involving different opinions on sth • *We were asked to write a discursive essay on the pros and cons of technological advances.*
- 1.197 susceptible** (adj) /sə'septəbl/  
likely to be affected by sth/sb or suffer from sth • *As a teenager, Mike was highly susceptible to criticism from his peers and took it all very personally.* ➤ susceptibility (n)
- 1.198 beneficially** (adv) /ˌbenɪ'fɪʃəli/  
in a way that is helpful or useful • *I'm sure a few days' break will affect you beneficially and you'll come back to work feeling refreshed.*  
➤ benefit (v), benefit (n), beneficial (adj)
- 1.199 adversely** (adv) /'ædvɜːsli/  
in a way that has an opposite or undesired effect • *The recession has adversely affected our plans to develop our business and we've lost most of our customers lately.* ➤ adversity (n), adverse (adj)
- 1.200 undue** (adj) /ˌʌn'djuː/  
unnecessary or more than acceptable • *Working from home put undue stress on Annie's family relationships.*  
🗣 Opp: due
- 1.201 excessive** (adj) /ɪk'sesɪv/  
much more than necessary • *Working in front of a computer for an excessive period of time can lead to eye strain and backache.*  
➤ exceed (v), excess (n), excessively (adv)
- 1.202 engage in sth** (phr v) /ɪn'geɪdʒ ɪn 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
participate in sth • *Some children may engage in bullying at school as a result of problems within their family environment.* ➤ engagement (n), engaged (adj), engaging (adj), engagingly (adv)
- 1.203 ridicule** (v) /'rɪdɪkjʊːl/  
make fun of • *Hamish's peers ridiculed him because of his Scottish accent when he moved to York.* ➤ ridicule (n), ridiculous (adj), ridiculously (adv)
- 1.204 draw the line** (expr) /drɔː ðə laɪn/  
set a limit; be unwilling to do sth • *Kate's parents are generally very tolerant, but they draw the line at letting her stay out all night unless they are sure of her whereabouts.*

- 1.205 core** (adj) /kɔː(r)/  
central and basic • *All staff are expected to support the core values of the company: integrity and quality service.* > core (n)
- 1.206 let yourself in for sth** (expr) /let jɔː'self ɪn fə(r)'sʌmθɪŋ/  
get involved in sth that may be a difficult experience • *Before you sign the contract with the company, make sure you know what you're letting yourself in for.*
- 1.207 distress** (n) /dɪ'stres/  
anxiety or suffering • *Mark is always willing to help a friend in distress.* > distress (v), distressed (adj), distressing (adj)
- 1.208 non-confrontational** (adj) /'nɒn,kɒnfɹən'teɪʃənəl/  
in a way that avoids causing an argument • *At times, even the most understanding parents find it hard to bite their tongues and remain calm and non-confrontational with their teenage children.*
- 1.209 boundary** (n) /'baʊndri/  
a point that marks the limit of sth • *Teachers have to set boundaries for student behaviour within the classroom environment.*
- 1.210 rear its (ugly) head** (expr) /rɪə(r) ɪts 'ʌgli hed/  
appear or occur • *When the possibility of losing his job reared its ugly head, George thought of becoming self-employed.*
- 1.211 stand your ground** (expr) /stænd jɔː(r) graʊnd/  
refuse to back down or give up; stick to your opinion • *Julie stood her ground and refused to work any unpaid overtime.*  
📎 Also: hold your ground

### Negative adjectives

aberrant	maladjusted
abnormal	misspent
apathetic	mistaken
compulsive	neurotic
cynical	obnoxious
distrustful	obsessive
dysfunctional	obstinate
excessive	troubled
gullible	undue
impassive	uneasy
inappropriate	vulnerable
inflexible	

### Other useful expressions

against all odds	be in sb's bad books
against your will	be in tune with
at a loss	be on good terms
at ease	be on the same
in a rut	wavelength
on cloud nine	steer clear of sb/sth
on edge	draw the line
out of character	let yourself in for sth
be beside yourself	stand your ground

## Video 1: From the Same Family

page 18

- 1.212 gesture** (n) /'dʒestʃə(r)/  
a non-verbal movement to show a certain feeling or meaning • *When travelling abroad, it's wise to avoid making certain gestures in case they're considered rude in another culture.* > gesture (v)
- 1.213 captivate** (v) /'kæptɪveɪt/  
attract and hold sb's close attention • *The audience were captivated by his stunning performance.* > captive (n), captivating (adj)
- 1.214 repel** (v) /rɪ'pel/  
cause sth/sb to move away or avoid you • *The combined Athenian and Platean forces repelled the Persian invaders at the Battle of Marathon.* > repellent (n), repulsive (adj), repulsively (adv)
- 1.215 outright** (adj) /'aʊtraɪt/  
absolute • *Her new book was an outright success and has been nominated for several awards.* > outright (adv)
- 1.216 tender** (adj) /'tendə(r)/  
gentle and caring • *The tender words in his letter moved me to tears.* > tenderness (n), tenderly (adv)
- 1.217 redefine** (v) /,riːdɪ'faɪn/  
give sth a new meaning; move the limits of sth • *Technology has redefined the art of written communication.* > redefinition (n)
- 1.218 complex** (adj) /'kɒmpleks/  
not simple • *It's amazing to think that ancient Greeks had the knowledge to devise complex mathematical formulae.* > complexity (n)
- 1.219 grasp** (n) /ækt'ɪvəti/  
ability to reach or achieve • *Having eaten all the leaves that were within its grasp, the panda lay down for a snooze.* > grasp (v)



- 1.220 sorrow** (n) /'sɒrəʊ/  
a strong feeling of sadness • *A look of sorrow swept across his face when he heard the bad news.* > sorrowful (adj), sorrowfully (adv)
- 1.221 glimpse** (v) /glɪmps/  
briefly notice sth/sb • *We just glimpsed the tail of lizard before it disappeared into the undergrowth.*
- 1.222 repulse** (v) /rɪ'pʌls/  
stop sb/sth coming close to you; reject sb's help or attention • *Any attempt the keeper made to get close to the lion was repulsed with an angry roar.* > repulsive (adj), repulsively (adv)
- 1.223 posture** (n) /'pɒstʃə(r)/  
the manner you position your body when you stand or sit • *Wearing uncomfortable shoes will do nothing for your posture and may cause severe back problems.*

- 1.224 humanity** (n) /hjuː'mænəti/  
the quality of showing kindness and compassion towards others; the state of being human • *If the new supervisor hopes to win the respect of the staff, she'd better loosen up and start showing some humanity.*  
> humanitarian (adj), humanitarianism (n)
- 1.225 resemblance** (n) /rɪ'zembləns/  
the fact of having a similar appearance to sth  
• *The sequel bears no resemblance to his original novel in the series.* > resemble (v)

### Verbs of movement

bare	propel
blast	swallow
compact	track
exert	grasp
exit	repel

# 2 Bright Ideas

## Reading

pages 20-21

- 2.1 pixel** (n) /'pɪksl/  
a unit that is the smallest individual part of a picture on a digital screen • *One small photograph can contain a million pixels.*  
➤ pixelate (v)
- 2.2 heart rate monitor** (n) /hɑ:t reɪt 'mɒnɪtə(r)/  
a piece of equipment used to check the pace of your heart • *From the movements on the heart rate monitor, it was clear that the unconscious patient was beginning to recover.*
- 2.3 hideously** (adv) /'hɪdiəsli/  
in a disgusting or extremely unpleasant way  
• *The restaurant was hideously decorated with plastic Santas and glittery red streamers.*  
➤ hideous (adj)
- 2.4 cheap and nasty** (expr) /tʃi:p ənd 'nɑ:sti/  
not costing much, but of poor quality • *On the website these boots seemed to be a great bargain, but they turned out to be just a cheap and nasty disappointment.*
- 2.5 minimalist** (adj) /'mɪnɪməlɪst/  
in a style that uses simple ideas or not using any more than what is absolutely necessary  
• *The play was staged on a minimalist set with a simple wooden frame and black background, which carried a powerful sense of tragedy.*  
➤ minimalism (n), minimal (adj), minimally (adv)
- 2.6 slew** (n) /slu:/  
a great number or amount • *The government was subject to a slew of criticism over the proposed changes to the education system.*
- 2.7 sleek** (adj) /sli:k/  
smooth, shiny and seemingly elegant  
• *Gwyneth wore a sleek black dress which made her look even more elegant than usual.*  
➤ sleek back/down (v), sleekness (n), sleekly (adv)
- 2.8 radical** (adj) /'rædɪkl/  
completely different and new • *Jean hardly recognised her old school friend due to the radical change in her appearance.*  
➤ radical (n)
- 2.9 render** (v) /'rendə(r)/  
cause sth to be in a certain state • *The latest update on this program has rendered it totally useless. I must find a way to revert to the earlier version.*
- 2.10 generic** (adj) /dʒə'nerɪk/  
common to a group or a range of things rather than specific • *The word 'device' is a generic term for any piece of equipment designed for a specific job.* ➤ generically (adv)
- 2.11 flattery** (n) /'flætəri/  
the act of giving excessive compliments or praise, often in order to gain sth from sb  
• *Flattery will get you everywhere with Professor Huggins; he just loves being praised for his work!* ➤ flatter (v), flattering (adj)
- 2.12 seminal** (adj) /'semɪnl/  
very important and having a major influence on developments • *Lesley played a seminal role in forming the company.*
- 2.13 downfall** (n) /'daʊnfɔ:l/  
the cause of the end of sth being in a powerful position • *The years of plague were a major factor in the downfall of ancient Athens.*
- 2.14 hanker** (v) /'hæŋkə(r)/  
strongly desire sth • *No matter how many gadgets Eric has, he's constantly hankering for more.* ➤ hankering (n)
- 2.15 mind you** (expr) /maɪnd ju:/  
used informally to add a detail what you already said • *Andrea's just locked herself out of her email account. Mind you, I'm not surprised – she can never remember passwords.*
- 2.16 diehard** (adj) /'daɪhɑ:d/  
with a fixed belief or goal; stubborn • *Even diehard gamers will find the new version of WipeOut really challenging.* ➤ diehard (n)
- 2.17 iconic** (adj) /aɪ'kɒnɪk/  
symbolising a particular ideal or concept; famous • *Mark Zuckerberg has reached iconic status with the success of Facebook.* ➤ icon (n)
- 2.18 not be fussed (about sth)** (expr) /nɒt bi: fʌst ə'baʊt 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
not be bothered about sth; not much interested in sth • *I'm not fussed about which brand name the phone is, so long as it functions efficiently.* ➤ fuss (v), fuss (n), fussy (adj)
- 2.19 brim** (v) /brɪm/  
be full of sth • *Brimming with enthusiasm, Antonia waited for her new tablet to arrive in the post.* ➤ brim (n)
- 2.20 sport** (v) /spɔ:t/  
wear sth proudly; show off a possession you're proud of • *People who go around sporting their new smartphones in public places are prime targets for thieves.*
- 2.21 zeitgeist** (n) /'zaɪtgaɪst/  
the common spirit or prevailing attitude typical of a particular period in history • *The book perfectly captured the zeitgeist of early 20th century Ireland.*

- 2.22 genie pants** (n) /'dʒiːni pænts/  
type of loose-fitting wide trousers • *The head teacher does not approve of students wearing baggy genie pants to school.*
- 2.23 beanie** (n) /'biːni/  
a type of small brimless hat • *Don't forget to wear your scarf and beanie; it's freezing out there!*
- 2.24 testament** (n) /'testəmənt/  
sth that proves sth else is true or exists  
• *A statue of the dog was erected in Edinburgh as a testament to his loyalty to his master.*
- 2.25 measure up** (phr v) /'meɪʒə(r) ʌp/  
be as good as expected • *The new printer didn't quite measure up to what we expected, given the rave reviews.* > measurement (n)
- 2.26 demographic** (n) /,demə'græfɪk/  
a group of customers within a particular age group, gender, interest group • *The website aims to appeal to the fifty-something demographic.* > demographic (adj)
- 2.27 spec** (n) /spek/  
a specification; a detail of the design or materials used in sth • *Just tell us what you want and we can build a new PC according to your specs.* > spec (v)
- 2.28 overexpose** (v) /,əʊvə'ɪks'pəʊz/  
affect the quality of an image by using a camera setting that lets too much light in  
• *It took some practice to master the phone's camera settings so as not to overexpose the photos.* > overexposure (n)
- 2.29 asking price** (n) /'ɑːskɪŋ praɪs/  
the starting price decided by the seller • *In my opinion, the house isn't worth the asking price; perhaps they would accept a lower offer.*
- 2.30 underwhelming** (adj) /ˌʌndə'welmɪŋ/  
not likely to impress or excite • *Despite the overwhelming cost of the tickets, I'm afraid the band's actual performance was disappointingly underwhelming.* > underwhelm (v)  
📖 Opp: overwhelming
- 2.31 deviate** (v) /'diːviət/  
change or do sth differently from normal  
• *Whilst J. K. Rowling deviated from her usual style to write adult fiction, Jo Nesbo has deviated in the opposite direction, moving from crime fiction to children's stories.* > deviation (n), deviant (adj)
- 2.32 incorporate** (v) /ɪn'kɔːpəreɪt/  
bring sth in to make it a part of sth else • *An unbreakable screen has been incorporated in the tablet's design.* > incorporation (n)
- 2.33 element** (n) /'elɪmənt/  
a necessary part or a quality of sth • *Front-facing cameras have become an essential element of phones for selfie addicts.*  
> elementary (adj)
- 2.34 precede** (v) /pri'siːd/  
occur or exist before sth else • *Months of trial and error on the part of the research team preceded the launch of the smartwatch.*  
> precedent (n)
- 2.35 scoff** (v) /skɒf/  
talk in a mocking way about sth that you consider stupid • *In the past, the idea of a horseless carriage was scoffed at in the way people recently scoffed at driverless vehicles.*
- 2.36 sold on sth** (expr) /səʊld ɒn 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
enthusiastic about; convinced that sth is useful/desirable • *Pavlos is sold on the idea of getting a 3D printer. Now all he needs is the cash to buy one.*
- 2.37 hefty** (adj) /'hefti/  
larger than normal • *It's not surprising you got such a hefty fine since you had parked all day in front of the police station.*
- 2.38 fork out** (phr v) /fɔːk aʊt/  
pay a lot for sth • *Few parents are wealthy enough to fork out for all the latest gadgets their children demand.*
- 2.39 jam** (v) /dʒæm/  
become unable to operate or move • *We returned the printer within a day of buying it because the paper was constantly jamming.*
- 2.40 tinge** (n) /tɪndʒ/  
a small amount of a particular colour  
• *Something was wrong with the colour setting on the camera, so all the prints came out with a greenish tinge.* > tinge (v)
- 2.41 the last straw** (expr) /ðə lɑːst strɔː/  
the final setback after a series of them, that makes sth impossible to deal with or accept  
• *We've been having problems with our new neighbours, but the last straw came when they tried to install a satellite dish and it fell on top of our car.*
- 2.42 durable** (adj) /'djʊərəbəl/  
made to be strong and long-lasting • *The smartphone cover was made of durable plastic that protected it from accidental damage.*  
> durability (n)
- 2.43 withstand** (v) /wɪð'stænd/  
be strong enough to remain unharmed through an extreme condition • *Liz was so relieved that her glasses managed to withstand being driven over after she had dropped them on the road.*
- 2.44 outweigh** (v) /ˌaʊt'weɪ/  
be more important than sth else • *The convenience of having a dual sim phone outweighs the costs.*



- 2.45 furnace** (n) /'fɜːnɪs/  
a piece of equipment enclosed by walls on all sides and closed on top that is heated to a high enough temperature to melt hard materials, such as metal or glass • *Until now, furnaces for melting iron ore have been heated by fossil fuels.*
- 2.46 aviation** (n) /,eɪvi'eɪʃn/  
the practical business of designing and building aircraft • *The modern age of aviation began with the design of hot air balloons in the 18th century.* > aviator (n)

### Compound nouns

asking price	heart rate monitor
carbon dioxide	micro-organism
computer literacy	quantum theory
cybernetic implant	test tube
genie pants	

## Vocabulary pages 22-23-24

- 2.47 deduce** (v) /dɪ'djuːs/  
reach a conclusion about sth on the basis of existing evidence • *Judging from the tyre tracks at the scene of the accident, the police deduced that the driver had been exceeding the speed limit.* > deduction (n), deducible (adj)
- 2.48 deduct** (v) /dɪ'dʌkt/  
take sth away from a total amount • *A small transaction fee will be deducted from the payment into your bank account.* > deduction (n), deductible (adj)
- 2.49 eminent** (adj) /'emɪnənt/  
respected and important, often within a certain profession • *An eminent underwater photographer produced the unique images for the magazine.* > eminence (n), eminently (adv)
- 2.50 imminent** (adj) /'ɪmɪnənt/  
seemingly about to happen • *Seeing the rapidly gathering clouds, we realised a storm was imminent.* > imminence (n), imminently (adv)
- 2.51 emit** (v) /i'mɪt/  
give off; send out • *The whale emitted a high-pitched sound before disappearing under the surface.* > emission (n)
- 2.52 melatonin** (n) /,melə'təʊnɪn/  
a chemical substance that affects skin colour in the body • *Melatonin is an essential hormone which affects our sleep patterns.*
- 2.53 causality** (n) /kɔː'zæləti/  
the scientific principle that everything has a cause • *Causality is simply the basic relationship between the cause of something and its effect.* > causal (adj)
- 2.54 infrared** (adj) /,ɪnfərə'red/  
using invisible electromagnetic waves longer than those of visible light • *Infrared radiation is used in scientific and medical applications.*
- 2.55 censor** (n) /'sensə(r)/  
sb who checks the content of books, films, and other media to remove parts considered unsuitable for a particular audience • *As the film contained some violent scenes, the censor had rated it unsuitable for young children.* > censor (v), censorship (n)
- 2.56 sensor** (n) /'sensə(r)/  
a piece of equipment that reacts to sound, light or movement, etc. to cause a device to operate or show sth • *The light above our front door is triggered by a sensor that detects movement.* > sensory (adj)
- 2.57 erode** (v) /ɪ'rəʊd/  
wear away the surface of sth • *The sides of the riverbank had been eroded dramatically by the heavy rains.* > erosion (n)
- 2.58 eradicate** (v) /ɪ'rædɪkeɪt/  
get rid of • *Insect-borne diseases are not easy to eradicate, especially in a humid climate.* > eradication (n)
- 2.59 polio** (n) /'pəʊliəʊ/  
the disease poliomyelitis, which affects the central nervous system • *Polio has become rare in the UK since the introduction of child inoculation programmes.*
- 2.60 fission** (n) /'fɪʃn/  
the act of splitting the central part of an atom • *The discovery of nuclear fission opened radical new possibilities in the field of electric power generation as well as the creation of atomic weapons.*
- 2.61 fusion** (n) /'fjuːʒn/  
the act of combining two or more things together to form one • *The artistic fusion of sound and light gave the restaurant a relaxing atmosphere.*
- 2.62 entail** (v) /ɪn'teɪl/  
involve • *If you tell us what exactly the project entails, we can give an accurate estimate for the job.*
- 2.63 uranium** (n) /ju'reɪniəm/  
a heavy, silver-coloured metal • *Uranium is used in the production of nuclear energy.*

- 2.64 ingenuous** (adj) /ɪn'dʒenjuəs/  
honest and blindly trusting • *I'd advise you not to be so ingenuous but to consider his proposal very carefully before you accept.* > ingenuously (adv)
- 2.65 ingenious** (adj) /ɪn'dʒiːniəs/  
very clever • *Virtual clouds are an ingenious way to save or share data.* > ingenuity (n), ingeniously (adv)
- 2.66 decompose** (v) /diːkəm'pəʊz/  
slowly break down or become destroyed naturally • *If you don't eat those grapes soon, they'll start to decompose.* > decomposition (n)
- 2.67 disintegrate** (v) /dis'ɪntɪɡreɪt/  
break up into very small pieces • *The dress was so old that its fabric had begun to disintegrate.* > disintegration (n)
- 2.68 dissolve** (v) /dɪ'zɒlv/  
make sth solid become part of a liquid  
• *The honey dissolved quickly in the hot tea.*
- 2.69 hurtle** (v) /'hɜːtl/  
move very quickly • *The spaceship began to break up as it hurtled through the Earth's atmosphere.*
- 2.70 micro-organism** (n) /,maɪkrəʊ'ɔːɡənɪz(ə)m/  
a tiny living thing • *Steve looked into the microscope to examine the micro-organisms in the piece of wood.*
- 2.71 radioactivity** (n) /,reɪdɪəʊæk'tɪvəti/  
the dangerous radiation sent out as a result of nuclear fission • *Dangerous levels of radioactivity were recorded across the country when the nuclear reactor exploded.* > radioactive (adj)
- 2.72 circumference** (n) /sə'kʌmfərəns/  
the measurement straight around a circle or a curved object • *The circumference of the Moon is almost 11,000 km.*
- 2.73 obsolete** (adj) /'ɒbsəliːt/  
no longer produced, often due to being replaced by sth new • *I doubt if it's possible to repair your ten-year-old printer as it's probably obsolete by now and you'll never find new parts.* > obsolescence (n)
- 2.74 outdated** (adj) /,aʊt'deɪtɪd/  
old-fashioned, therefore, not useful  
• *Unfortunately, our school's computers are so outdated that they keep breaking down.*
- 2.75 utilitarian** (adj) /juːtɪlɪ'teəriən/  
made for a practical purpose rather than for appearance • *Kate hated wearing her dull grey school uniform, denouncing it as an utterly utilitarian style.* > utilitarianism (n)
- 2.76 aesthetically** (adv) /iːs'θetɪkli/  
in a way related to the look of sth • *The garden offered an aesthetically pleasing riot of colour in spring.* > aesthetic (adj), aestheticism (n)
- 2.77 unorthodox** (adj) /ʌn'ɔːθədɒks/  
unconventional; different from what is normally done • *Her unorthodox teaching methods were questioned at first, but they have shown positive results.* > unorthodoxy (adv)  
🔗 Opp: orthodox
- 2.78 painstaking** (adj) /'peɪnzteɪkɪŋ/  
with great care and effort • *With painstaking attention to detail, the technician removed and replaced the faulty hardware.* > painstakingly (adv)
- 2.79 tangible** (adj) /'tændʒəbl/  
able to be seen and touched • *Detectives are pretty certain that he is the thief, but he can't be charged without tangible evidence.* > tangibly (adv)  
🔗 Opp: intangible
- 2.80 scrutiny** (n) /'skruːtəni/  
close examination • *The politician's personal emails have become subject to public scrutiny.* > scrutinise (v)
- 2.81 breach** (n) /briːtʃ/  
a break in a system or agreement which causes it to fail • *Pete was fired from the company as a result of his breach of confidentiality.* > breach (v)
- 2.82 computer literacy** (n) /kəm'pjʊːtə(r)'lɪtərəsi/  
the ability to use and understand computers well • *Vincent's level of computer literacy isn't proficient enough for him to design his own website.* > literate (adj)
- 2.83 spreadsheet** (n) /'spredʃiːt/  
a computer program in which data is recorded in rows and columns for calculations or plans, etc. • *All our financial accounts are recorded on monthly spreadsheets, which are backed up on the cloud.*
- 2.84 mimic** (v) /'mɪmɪk/  
copy the way sb/sth acts or speaks • *The anti-virus scan detected a potential threat which was simply a harmless program that mimicked the pattern of phishing bug.* > mimic (n), mimicry (n)
- 2.85 at your fingertips** (expr) /æt ɔːr 'fɪŋɡətɪps/  
get and use sth very easily • *Ben made sure he had all the data at his fingertips before submitting his proposal.*
- 2.86 up and running** (expr) /ʌp ənd 'rʌnɪŋ/  
functioning correctly • *A few delays held up the start of the project, but it's now up and running on schedule.*
- 2.87 think outside the box** (expr) /θɪŋk ,aʊt'saɪd ðə bɒks/  
have imaginative and original ideas • *If humans were incapable of thinking outside the box, they wouldn't have survived past the Stone Age.*

- 2.88 ghastly** (adj) /'gɑːstli/  
terrible • *Are you feeling okay? You look absolutely ghastly.*
- 2.89 quantum theory** (n) /'kwɒntəm 'θɪəri/  
the theory of physics around the idea that energy exists in indivisible units • *I don't know anyone at all who understands quantum theory!*
- 2.90 ahead of the curve** (phr) /ə'hed əv ðə kɜːv/  
more advanced than a current trend • *Instead of copying other companies' products, it's better to develop original ideas to keep ahead of the curve.* > curve (v)
- 2.91 advent** (n) /'ædvent/  
the arrival of a new invention • *Before the advent of email, we had to wait days or weeks to receive letters.*
- 2.92 negligence** (n) /'neglɪdʒəns/  
not giving enough care and attention • *The car wasn't so much old as falling apart due to the owner's negligence.* > negligent (adj), negligently (adv)
- 2.93 centenarian** (n) /,sentɪ'neəriən/  
sb who is 100 years old or more • *It's amazing how many centenarians are still alive and well on the island.*
- 2.94 precedent** (n) /'presɪdənt/  
an action or decision in the past which was the same or similar to one that happened later • *Such devastating storms are without precedent in this part of the country; we've never seen anything like it!* > precede (v), precedence (n)
- 2.95 persevere** (v) /,pɜːsɪ'viə(r)/  
keep on trying despite adverse conditions • *Despite the high fees, Martin decided to persevere with the course until he completed his masters degree.* > perseverance (n), persevering (adj)
- 2.96 carbon dioxide** (n) /,kɑːbən daɪ'ɒksaɪd/  
the gas emitted when people or animals breathe out, by plants or by burning • *Plants and trees take in carbon dioxide in the daylight and emit it at night.*
- 2.97 back and forth** (expr) /bæk ənd fɔːθ/  
from own side to another and back again • *Jerry walked back and forth, impatiently waiting for the train.*
- 2.98 back to front** (expr) /bæk tə frʌnt/  
with the wrong side facing • *I got dressed in such a rush after swimming that I put on my sweater back to front and didn't notice till I was on the bus.*
- 2.99 little by little** (expr) /'lɪtl baɪ 'lɪtl/  
in slow and steady steps • *Little by little, the sea level is rising along our coast.*
- 2.100 more or less** (expr) /mɔː(r) ɔː les/  
approximately; nearly • *Rabies is more or less non-existent in our country, thanks to immunisation.*
- 2.101 safe and sound** (expr) /seɪf ənd saʊnd/  
out of danger; not harmed • *It was a rough flight through the storm clouds, but we landed safe and sound at the airport.*
- 2.102 time after time** (expr) /taɪm 'ɑːftə(r) taɪm/  
repeatedly; regularly • *Time after time, our head teacher has warned us not to bring mobile phones into the classroom.*
- 2.103 touch and go** (expr) /tʌtʃ ənd gəʊ/  
a difficult situation that may have an unpleasant outcome • *I was confident about taking the exam, but it was touch and go on the day when I realised how hard it actually was.*
- 2.104 wear and tear** (expr) /weə(r) ənd teə(r)/  
damage to things from normal everyday use • *Most modern phones are not designed to last through years of wear and tear.*
- 2.105 hitch** (n) /hɪtʃ/  
a minor problem or delay • *Frank managed to install the new program without a hitch by following the step-by-step guide.*
- 2.106 grain** (n) /greɪn/  
a small seed of a plant such as rice; a small hard piece or amount of sth • *Nura took a few grains of rice and planted them to grow food for her family.* > grainy (adj)
- 2.107 fungi** (n) /'fʌŋɡiː/  
plural of fungus; organisms like a plant without leaves that grows on other plants or trees and in damp areas • *The north side of the tree was covered in fungi.* > fungal (adj)
- 2.108 progenitor** (n) /prəʊ'dʒenɪtə(r)/  
an ancestor • *The ancient calculating device found in the Antikythera shipwreck is regarded as a progenitor of the computer.* > progeny (n)
- 2.109 genome** (n) /'dʒiːnəʊm/  
the genetic material of a living thing • *A human genome fits into a cell nucleus that's just the size of a pinpoint.* > genomics (n)
- 2.110 mutation** (n) /mjuː'teɪʃn/  
a change in the structure of sth; a genetic variation • *The city's population was affected by a deadly mutation of the flu virus.* > mutate (v), mutant (adj)
- 2.111 spring** (v) /sprɪŋ/  
move suddenly and quickly • *George sprang to his feet as soon as the phone rang.* > spring (n)



- 2.112 proceed** (v) /prə'si:d/ continue to do sth; go on (to do sth after doing sth else) • *After reading the instructions, Mavis proceeded to connect the new router.* > proceedings (n)
- 2.113 originate** (v) /ə'ri:dʒɪneɪt/ come from a particular place/source • *The game of chess is thought to have originated in Asia or the Middle East.* > originator (n)
- 2.114 crucial** (adj) /'kru:ʃl/ of critical importance • *Regular back-ups are crucial to avoid losing important data.* > crucially (adv)
- 2.115 shed light on** (expr) /ʃed laɪt ɒn/ give a clue to explain the cause of sth • *If you could shed some light on exactly what the job involves, we could give you an estimate for the costs.*
- 2.116 sift** (v) /sɪft/ examine sth in detail • *Jason had to sift through years of paperwork to find his birth certificate.* > sifter (n)

### Research & Science verbs

anticipate	hanker
brim	hurtle
decompose	incorporate
deduce	jam
deteriorate	mimic
deviate	originate
disintegrate	overexpose
dissolve	persevere
emit	precede
entail	proceed
envisage	render
eradicate	scoff
erode	sift
exceed	unveil
flag	withstand

## Grammar

pages 25-26-27

- 2.117 flag** (v) /flæg/ put a mark on sth that needs future attention • *Lulu skimmed through the mass of emails in her in box and flagged up the ones which were urgent.* > flag (n)
- 2.118 exponentially** (adv) /ˌekspə'nenʃəli/ in a way that increases progressively faster • *Air pollution over the city increases exponentially with the burning of fossil fuels upon the onset of winter.* > exponent (n), exponential (adj)
- 2.119 deteriorate** (v) /dɪ'tɪəriəreɪt/ become worse • *John decided to emigrate after his hopes of finding work deteriorated rapidly as local businesses closed.* > deterioration (v), deteriorated (adj)
- 2.120 test tube** (n) /test tju:b/ a glass tube used in scientific experiments and medical tests • *An array of test tubes filled with strange liquids were perched on the rack next to his microscope.*
- 2.121 frontier** (n) /'frʌntɪə(r)/ a limit • *Alexander Fleming broke the frontiers of medical science when he discovered penicillin in 1928.*
- 2.122 loom** (v) /lu:m/ appear suddenly, often in a manner that is threatening • *A huge dark shape loomed in the doorway.*
- 2.123 brew** (v) /bru:/ slowly begin to form; seem likely to happen • *Trouble had been brewing on the borders long before war finally broke out.* > brew (n), brewery (n)
- 2.124 literary** (adj) /'lɪtərəri/ to do with literature • *Gwen wrote her thesis on the literary works of 19th century female authors.* > literature (n)
- 2.125 envisage** (v) /ɪn'vɪzɪdʒ/ imagine • *I cannot envisage having a robot to clean the house.*
- 2.126 dread** (v) /dred/ have a fear that sth terrible will happen • *I dread to think what would happen if there was an accident on the metro line.* > dread (n), dreadful (adj), dreadfully (adv)
- 2.127 resounding** (adj) /rɪ'zaʊndɪŋ/ loud or great • *Anna's first novel was a resounding failure, but her second had more sales.* > resoundingly (adv)
- 2.128 in the pipeline** (expr) /ɪn ðə 'paɪp,laɪn/ scheduled or planned for the future
- 2.129 unveil** (v) /ˌʌn'veɪl/ reveal sth that has been covered • *The prince's official portrait was unveiled at a special ceremony.*
- 2.130 on the cards** (expr) /ɒn ðə kɑ:dz/ likely to happen; predictable • *Your promotion was always on the cards as you've been working so hard all these years.*
- 2.131 keep sb posted** (expr) /ki:p 'sʌmbədi 'pəʊstɪd/ give sb regular information on a situation • *Keep me posted on how things go after your operation.*

- 2.132 upcoming** (adj) /'ʌpkʌmɪŋ/  
planned to happen soon • *Walter was feeling a bit nervous about his upcoming driving test.*
- 2.133 anticipate** (n) /æn'tɪsɪpeɪt/  
expect an outcome and prepare for it; look forward to sth that's about to happen • *Try to anticipate what type of questions you'll be asked in the interview.* > anticipation (n)
- 2.134 warehouse** (n) /'weəhaʊs/  
a store where goods are kept before being sold or sent to shop • *Our lost cat was found sleeping in a furniture warehouse near our home.*
- 2.135 likelihood** (n) /'laɪklihʊd/  
possibility • *In all likelihood, driverless buses will soon be a common sight in our cities.*  
> likely (adj)
- 2.136 nanofibre** (n) /'nænəʊfaɪbə(r)/  
a light flexible fabric made using nano-technology • *These nanofibre climbing boots are incredible light and waterproof.*
- 2.137 cybernetic implant** (n) /,saɪbə'netɪk ɪm'plɑːnt/  
an implant made to enhance human abilities using cybernetics (the study of how machines communicate information compared with how the human brain communicates information) • *Cybernetic implants could be used to help patients with physical disabilities.*
- 2.138 exceed** (v) /ɪk'siːd/  
go beyond what is expected • *His generous offer exceeded our expectations.* > excess (n), excessive (adj), excessively (adv)
- 2.139 doom** (n) /duːm/  
an inevitable unpleasant event • *A sense of doom hung over the dull graffiti-covered boarded-up shops and empty marketplace.*  
> doom (v)
- 2.140 forthcoming** (adj) /,fɔːθ'kʌmɪŋ/  
willing to give help or information; upcoming • *Tom wasn't very forthcoming about his research. It all seems highly confidential.*
- 2.141 in the offing** (expr) /ɪn ðə 'ɒfɪŋ/  
likely to happen in the near future • *The company has a revolutionary new design in the offing which they hope to present at the next car exhibition.*
- 2.142 impending** (adj) /ɪm'pendɪŋ/  
about to happen (usually for sth negative) • *As the tremors increased, the villagers evacuated to escape the impending volcanic eruption.*

## Useful expressions

### Adverbial & Adjectival

ahead of the curve  
back and forth  
back to front  
in the offing  
in the pipeline  
little by little  
more or less  
on the cards  
safe and sound  
sold on sth  
the last straw  
time after time  
touch and go  
up and running  
wear and tear

### Expressions with Verbs

keep sb posted  
put sth into perspective  
shed light on  
think outside the box  
not be fussed about

### Phrasal Verbs

measure up  
fork out

## Speaking

page 29

- 2.143 automated** (adj) /'ɔːtəmeɪtɪd/  
made to operate by a machine to reduce human labour • *The process of car manufacturing has become almost entirely automated, cutting the need for factory workers.* > automate (v), automation (n), automatic (adj), automatically (adv)
- 2.144 striking** (adj) /'straɪkɪŋ/  
noticeable and interesting; attractive in an unusual way • *There was a striking similarity between the girls, although they were not related.* > strike (v), strikingly (adv)

## Writing pages 30-31

- 2.145 reluctantly** (adv) /rɪ'lʌktəntli/  
unwillingly • *Reluctantly, we bid our friendly hosts goodbye and headed for the airport to catch our homebound flight.* > reluctant (adj), reluctance (n)
- 2.146 techie** (n) /'teki/  
a computer expert or enthusiast • *My internet connection simply froze, and I had to call the techie on the 24-hour helpline to get back online again.* > technical (adj), technically (adv)
- 2.147 drone** (n) /drəʊn/  
a small remote-controlled aircraft used for aerial photography or for military purposes • *Eric used his drone to take some spectacular aerial photos of the lake.*

- 2.148 thought-provoking** (adj) /θɔ:t prə'vʊkɪŋ/  
inspiring serious thoughts about sth • *While some 20th century works of science fiction were pure fantasy in their time, it's quite thought-provoking how close they've come to reality.*
- 2.149 put sth into perspective** (expr) /pʊt 'sʌmθɪŋ 'ɪntə pə'spektɪv/  
compare things to make a reasoned judgement about sth • *When you see people living on the streets, it puts our idea of home comforts into perspective.*

## Technology

### Nouns

advent	mutation
aviation	nanofibre
biofluorescence	neon
breach	pixel
causality	precedent
circumference	progenitor
drone	radioactivity
element	scrutiny
fission	sensor
frontier	spec
furnace	spreadsheet
fusion	techie
genome	tinge
hitch	uranium
likelihood	

- 2.152 cartilaginous** (adj) /,kɑ:tɪ'lædʒɪnəs/  
with a skeleton made of cartilage (strong white tissue) • *Sharks are an example of huge cartilaginous animals* > cartilage (n)
- 2.153 serenity** (n) /sə'renəti/  
peaceful calmness • *The soft lighting created an atmosphere of serenity.* > serene (adj), serenely (adv)
- 2.154 eel** (n) /i:l/  
a snakelike fish • *The sight of the long wriggly eels was enough to put me off swimming in the lake.*
- 2.155 stingray** (n) /'stɪŋreɪ/  
a large flat fish with a long tail that has a dangerous sting • *As he was scuba diving, Marios almost stood on a stingray which was lying on the sea bed.*
- 2.156 physiologically** (adv) /,fɪziə'lɒdʒɪkli/  
in a way connected with how a living thing functions • *Human beings' organs are physiologically similar to many other mammals.* > physiology (n), physiologist (n), physiological (adj)
- 2.157 surreal** (adj) /sə'ri:əl/  
more dreamlike rather than realistic • *Swimming close to the dolphins was a surreal experience.* > surrealism (n), surrealist (n)

### Adjectives

automated	obsolete
cartilaginous	outdated
crucial	painstaking
eminent	radical
forthcoming	seminal
generic	sleek
iconic	surreal
imminent	tangible
impending	thought-provoking
infrared	unorthodox
ingenuous	upcoming
ingenious	utilitarian
minimalist	

## Video 2: Neon Seas

page 32

- 2.150 neon** (n) /'ni:ɒn/  
a gas that gives a bright light when electricity goes through it • *A bright green neon sign was flashing continuously outside the hotel window, making it impossible for me to sleep.*
- 2.151 biofluorescence** (n) /,baɪəʊ'flɔ:resns/  
the naturally ability to absorb light and transform it to a different colour • *The biofluorescence of fish and other creatures makes the sea bed a colourful place.*  
> biofluorescent (adj)



# 3 Right On!

page 35

- 3.1 **snare** (n) /sneə(r)/  
a small, usually metal, trap used for catching animals • *Lee released the rabbit whose foot had got trapped in the snare.* > snare, ensnare (v)

## Reading

pages 36-37

- 3.2 **NGO** (abbrev) /,en dʒiː 'əʊ/  
a non-governmental organisation; a charity or other non-profit organisation not controlled by governments • *Several new NGOs were formed to offer aid to economic immigrants.*
- 3.3 **relief** (n) /rɪ'liːf/  
practical emergency aid, such as food, clothes or medical supplies • *Relief workers have been doing their best to support the earthquake victims.* > relieve (v), relieved (adj)
- 3.4 **humanitarian** (adj) /hjuː,mæni'teəriən/  
related to supporting and improving conditions for people in need • *The mass influx of illegal immigrants has created an unmanageable humanitarian crisis.* > humanitarian, humanitarianism (n)
- 3.5 **sponsorship** (n) /'spɒnsəʃɪp/  
financial support, often given in return for advertising • *Our local marine wildlife support group depends on sponsorship from a mobile phone provider to fund the new rescue centre.* > sponsor (v), sponsor (n)
- 3.6 **food bank** (n) /fuːd bæŋk/  
a place where free food is given to people in need • *It's shocking to think that there is a need to feed people through community food banks in so many countries.*
- 3.7 **soup kitchen** (n) /suːp 'kɪtʃɪn/  
a place where soup or other cooked food is served to destitute people • *Living on the streets since she lost her home, Tracy waits in line for a plate of food at the soup kitchen every day.*
- 3.8 **run-down** (adj) /'rʌn,daʊn/  
in a neglected poor condition • *Central Glasgow has been transformed since the run-down old slums were replaced by modern buildings and pedestrianised shopping areas.*
- 3.9 **pocket** (n) /'pɒkɪt/  
a small separate part of a larger area • *Allied forces had taken control of most of the country, but met with a few pockets of resistance in the east.*

- 3.10 **façade** (n) /fə'sɑːd/  
the outward appearance of sth/sb, which may be different to the inner character • *Despite his brave façade, Kevin tends to get easily upset at the sight of suffering.*
- 3.11 **bunch** (n) /bʌntʃ/  
a (disorganised) group of people • *An assorted bunch of volunteers, from teenagers to elderly, turned up to help out at the bazaar.* > bunch (v)
- 3.12 **heavenwards** (adv) /'hevɪnwədz/  
towards the sky • *When asked where she was intending to find cash for the project, Jean simply raised her eyes heavenwards and shrugged.*
- 3.13 **pretence** (n) /prɪ'tens/  
the act of pretending that sth is true • *The Smiths dropped their pretence of wealth when the banks cancelled their credit cards.* > pretend (v), pretender (n), pretend (adj)
- 3.14 **ladle** (v) /'leɪdl/  
to serve food using a large deep spoon • *Tony ladled the delicious sauce on top of the pasta.* > ladle (n)
- 3.15 **shawl** (n) /ʃɔːl/  
an item of clothing worn around the shoulders or covering the head • *Liana knitted some warm shawls for the women at the homeless shelter.*
- 3.16 **humbling** (adj) /'hʌmbliŋ/  
that makes you feel not as good as you believed you were • *It was a humbling experience for Bill to see how happy the children were despite their poverty.* > humble (v), humbleness (n)
- 3.17 **turn your back on sb/sth** (expr) /tʜːn jɔː(r) bæk ɒn 'sʌmbədɪl/ 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
ignore or reject sb/sth • *When George went to prison for fraud, even his close family turned their back on him.*
- 3.18 **in earnest** (phr) /ɪn 'ɜːnɪst/  
seriously and sincerely • *The tears in his eyes showed he was speaking in earnest as he described his wartime experience.* > earnestly (adv)
- 3.19 **sentiment** (n) /'sentɪmənt/  
a strong feeling • *I completely agree with your sentiments on this issue.* > sentimental (adj), sentimentally (adv)
- 3.20 **selfless** (adj) /'selfləs/  
caring more about the needs of others than your own • *In an utterly selfless fashion, Helen always helps anyone in need without a second thought.* > selflessness (n), selflessly (adv)

- 3.21 austerity** (n) /ə'sterəti/  
a situation where people have to make do with very little money due to poor economic conditions • *Faced with the prospect of raising their family in austerity in Greece, they opted to emigrate to Australia for a more secure future.* > austere (adj), austere (adv)
- 3.22 middleman** (n) /'mɪdlmæn/  
a person who liaises or negotiates between people or companies • *Charles acts as a middleman between job seekers and employers.*
- 3.23 donor** (n) /'dəʊnə(r)/  
a person who gives sth freely to help others • *A new children's hospital was built following a generous contribution from an anonymous donor.* > donate (v), donation (n)
- 3.24 recipient** (n) /rɪ'sɪpiənt/  
sb who receives sth • *Although the company sends out hundreds of emails every day, most recipients ignore them, so they only get a handful of responses.* > receive (v)
- 3.25 orphanage** (n) /'ɔːfənɪdʒ/  
an institution for children whose parents are dead • *Candice grew up in an orphanage after her grandparents died in the war.* > orphan (v), orphan (n)
- 3.26 mutually** (adv) /'mjuːtʃuəli/  
felt to an equal extent by all involved • *Let's find a mutually convenient venue to meet in.* > mutual (adj)
- 3.27 redistribution** (n) /rɪ'dɪstrɪ'bjuːʃn/  
sharing out sth in a different way than it was previously • *The opposition party has called for the redistribution of public money from defence into the education sector.* > redistribute (v)
- 3.28 sustenance** (n) /'sʌstənəns/  
the nourishment we need to stay alive and healthy • *The country's minimum wage level is hardly enough to provide daily sustenance for a small family.* > sustain (v), sustainability (n), sustainable (adj), sustainably (adv)
- 3.29 stigma** (n) /'stɪgmə/  
sth that causes a feeling of disapproval or prejudice • *There's no longer any stigma about being unemployed since so many people have been in the same position.* > stigmatise (v)
- 3.30 traumatic** (adj) /trɔː'mætɪk/  
extremely difficult and causing great stress • *The most traumatic experience I ever had as a child was when our dog went missing for a week.* > traumatise (v), trauma (n), traumatically (adv)
- 3.31 dignity** (n) /'dɪgnəti/  
a sense of honour and self-respect • *After years of unemployment, Fred felt a sense of dignity when he started working for this firm.* > dignify (v)
- 3.32 soul-crushing** (adj) /səʊl 'krʌʃɪŋ/  
confidence-destroying; extremely disappointing • *Being questioned in front of the judge in court was a soul-crushing experience.*
- 3.33 tally** (n) /'tæli/  
a count of the total or amount of sth • *Alison kept a tally of the number of homeless who arrived at the shelter every night.* > tally (v)
- 3.34 prominently** (adv) /'prɒmɪnəntli/  
mainly • *When we reached the restaurant, a sign was prominently displayed in the window informing us that it was closed for repairs.* > prominence (n), prominent (adj)
- 3.35 signee** (n) /,saɪ'niː/  
sb who signs their name on sth • *According to the group's Facebook page, the petition has attracted 30,000 signees so far.* > sign (v)
- 3.36 philanthropist** (n) /fɪ'lænθrəpɪst/  
sb wealthy who helps people in need, usually by making donations • *Donating £5.00 per year to your favourite cause does not make you a philanthropist.* > philanthropy (n), philanthropic (adj)
- 3.37 hashtag** (n) /'hæʃtæg/  
a key word or phrase with the hash symbol '#' in front of it, used as a search tool on social media • *After experimenting with different hashtags, Kate began to reach a wider audience through her Twitter account.*
- 3.38 activism** (n) /'æktɪvɪz(ə)m/  
the practice of working towards social change, often collectively • *Brenda felt it was time to get involved in environmental activism when she saw the state of her local beach.* > activist (n), active (adj), actively (adv)
- 3.39 narcissism** (n) /'nɑːsɪsɪz(ə)m/  
the tendency to admire yourself and your appearance to an extreme extent • *Is the selfie craze purely down to narcissism, or is it simply a cry for approval to cover insecurity?* > narcissistic (adj)
- 3.40 mask** (v) /mɑːsk/  
disguise; cover sth up to hide it • *We all managed to mask our feelings until the last moment, so Melinda had no idea about the surprise party.* > mask (n), masked (adj)
- 3.41 altruism** (n) /'æltruɪz(ə)m/  
the fact of caring selflessly about other people's needs • *It was questionable whether the celebrity's support for the cause was motivated by altruism or to stay in the limelight.* > altruistic (adj)
- 3.42 prevalent** (adj) /'prevələnt/  
widespread or common at a particular time or place • *Taking advantage of the prevalent sympathy towards the disaster victims, the uploaded video caught the eye of millions of viewers and earned a fortune from clicks on ads.* > prevail (v), prevalence (n)

- 3.43 surplus** (adj) /'sɜːpləs/  
in excess of what you need • *Any more donations of clothes for the bazaar would be surplus to requirements as we already have more than we can store.* > surplus (n)
- 3.44 straitened** (adj) /'streɪtnd/  
short of money or having less than you had before • *Following their redundancy upon the closure of the company, the former staff are now living in straitened circumstances.* > strait (n)
- 3.45 legendary** (adj) /'ledʒəndri/  
famous and often mentioned • *Fans were devastated at the death of the legendary David Bowie in 2016.* > legend (n)
- 3.46 irony** (n) /'aɪrəni/  
a situation where sth has an opposite or contrasting result to what is intended • *The irony was that the new Minister for Health and Sport was an overweight heavy smoker who never walked the length of himself.* > ironic (adj), ironically (adv)
- 3.47 address** (v) /ə'dres/  
deal with • *It's time our government addressed the problem of youth unemployment.* > address (n)
- 3.48 foremost** (adj) /'fɔːməʊst/  
most important or urgent • *The issue of heating allowances for the elderly should be foremost on the agenda.* > foremost (adv)
- 3.49 reap the benefit** (expr) /riːp ðə 'benɪfɪt/  
have the advantage of the positive results of sth • *Studying for her masters in Law was no picnic, but now she's got her own practice and is starting to reap the benefits.*
- 3.50 band together** (phr v) /bənd tə'geðə(r)/  
form a group to work collectively • *The parents and teachers banded together to organise the school fair.*
- 3.51 destitute** (adj) /'destɪtjuːt/  
without any money or source of income • *Finding himself destitute, Vidalis wandered the streets in search of work.* > destitution (n)
- 3.52 prep** (v) /prep/  
prepare • *Have you prepped your opening speech yet?* > prep (n)
- 3.53 round up** (phr v) /raʊnd ʌp/  
find people or animals and bring them together in a group • *Irene has rounded up a few friends to help with the kids' party.* > round-up (n)
- 3.54 unsightly** (adj) /ʌn'saɪtli/  
ugly; unpleasant looking • *The unsightly figures of the homeless sleeping in city centre doorways are often a source of concern among passers-by.*
- 3.55 fictitious** (adj) /fɪk'tɪʃəs/  
made-up and not real or true • *His plot is based on a real situation, but all the characters have fictitious names.* > fiction (n), fictitiously (adv)
- 3.56 intermediary** (adj) /,ɪntə'mɪːdiəri/  
sb who helps to negotiate an agreement between two or more groups or organisations • *Websites such as eBay™ offer an intermediary platform between buyers and sellers.* > intermediate (adj)
- 3.57 benefactor** (n) /'benɪfæktə(r)/  
sb who donates money or goods, etc. to help individuals or charities • *The new hospital wing is to be named after the benefactor who funded the construction.*
- 3.58 solely** (adv) /'səʊlli/  
only; exclusively • *The hostel provides shelter solely for abused women and their children.* > sole (adj)
- 3.59 redeem** (v) /rɪ'diːm/  
exchange sth for sth else • *During the Second World War, British families were given vouchers which they redeemed to claim their food rations.* > redemption (n)
- 3.60 beneficiary** (n) /,benɪ'fɪjəri/  
sb who is entitled to receive a donation or other benefit • *All potential beneficiaries have to give some proof of identity at the community centre before receiving any food vouchers.* > benefit (v, n), beneficial (adj), beneficially (adv)
- 3.61 impoverished** (adj) /ɪm'pɒvərɪʃt/  
very poor • *Crime rates are high in the most impoverished areas of the city.* > impoverish (v), impoverishment (n)
- 3.62 harrowing** (adj) /'hærəʊɪŋ/  
frightening or very upsetting • *Getting to the bomb shelter when the air-raid warning sounded was a harrowing experience.* > harrow (v)
- 3.63 chasten** (v) /'tʃeɪsn/  
make sb feel sorry for doing sth • *Our visit to the long-term care unit in the children's hospital was a chastening experience.* > chastely (adv)
- 3.64 altruistic** (adj) /,æltru'ɪstɪk/  
putting other people's needs before your own • *A plethora of electronic petitions are generated daily seemingly on altruistic grounds.* > altruism (n), altruistically (adv)

### Charity work: nouns

activism	orphanage
altruism	redistribution
austerity	relief
food bank	soup kitchen
humanitarian	sponsorship
NGO	sustenance



# Vocabulary pages 38-39-40

- 3.65 conscious** (adj) /'kɒnʃəs/  
deliberate; determined • *Ben always makes a conscious effort to help those less fortunate than he is.* > consciousness (n), consciously (adv)  
📖 Opp: unconscious
- 3.66 conscience** (n) /'kɒnʃəns/  
the sense that makes you feel guilty if you do sth wrong • *How can you cheat your customers with a clear conscience? Don't you care at all?* > conscientious (adj), conscientiously (adv)
- 3.67 revolt** (v) /rɪ'vəʊlt/  
react against sth/sb you feel is wrong or bad • *The majority of Scots revolted against the UK's decision to leave the European Union.* > revolution (v), revolutionary (adj)
- 3.68 oppress** (v) /ə'pres/  
treat sb unfairly by denying their rights and freedom; restrict sb's development • *Laws which oppress the rights of women are still sadly prevalent in many countries.* > oppression (n), oppressor (n), oppressive (adj), oppressively (adv)
- 3.69 suppress** (v) /sə'pres/  
restrain sth; stop sth from developing • *The attempt at a military coup was suppressed overnight.* > suppression, suppressant (n)
- 3.70 uprising** (n) /'ʌpraɪzɪŋ/  
a revolt against people in power • *The uprising which began against Ottoman rule in 1821 led to the establishment of an independent Greek nation.*
- 3.71 persecute** (v) /'pɜːsɪkjʊːt/  
treat sb unfairly or cruelly because of their beliefs, race, etc. • *Janet discovered that her ancestors had fled from France to Scotland in 1685 because they were being persecuted for their religious beliefs.* > persecution (n)
- 3.72 prosecute** (v) /'prɒsɪkjʊːt/  
charge sb in court for committing a crime • *The police decided not to prosecute the homeless woman for stealing food from the dustbin.* > prosecution, prosecutor (n)
- 3.73 affluent** (adj) /'æfluənt/  
very wealthy with a comfortable living standard • *After the civil war, many Greek families emigrated to more affluent countries, such as Australia.* > affluence (n)
- 3.74 effluent** (n) /'efluənt/  
sewage or other liquid waste • *Due to a blockage in the drains, there was a disgusting smell of effluent in the street.*
- 3.75 disburse** (v) /dɪs'bɜːs/  
pay out sums of money from an amount collected to different people or groups • *The college disburses scholarships to up to 100 students every year.* > disbursement (n)
- 3.76 disperse** (v) /dɪ'spɜːs/  
make sth/sb spread out and move away in different directions; scatter • *We need a good shower of rain to disperse some of the smoke polluting the city.* > dispersion (n), dispersal (n)
- 3.77 emigrate** (v) /'emɪgreɪt/  
leave your country to go to live in another one • *Many families emigrated from Europe to the USA in the 17th century.* > emigrant, emigration (n)
- 3.78 immigrate** (v) /'ɪmɪgreɪt/  
move to a country to live there after leaving your homeland • *Millions of Asians and Africans have immigrated to Europe in recent years.* > immigrant (n), immigration (n)
- 3.79 empathy** (n) /'empəθi/  
the ability to relate to or understand sb else's feelings • *Rod developed a sense of empathy with the villagers after spending the harsh winter with them.* > empathise (v), empathetic (adj), empathetically (adv)
- 3.80 condemn** (v) /kən'dem/  
express strong disapproval for sth you feel is wrong • *Animal welfare groups throughout the world condemned the mass poisoning of strays.* > condemnation (n)
- 3.81 condone** (n) /kən'dəʊn/  
accept or show approval for immoral behaviour • *Violence against innocent people or animals should never be condoned.*
- 3.82 advocate** (v) /'ædvəkeɪt/  
support and recommend sth • *The organisation strongly advocates the provision of more homeless shelters in the city centre.* > advocate (n)
- 3.83 blatantly** (adv) /'bleɪtəntli/  
openly and frankly without caring how others are affected • *It is blatantly obvious that the state is unable or unwilling to provide adequate welfare support.* > blatant (adj)
- 3.84 disregard** (v) /,dɪsrɪ'gɑːd/  
ignore • *The fact that Tom was a war hero was disregarded when he was out of work.* > disregard (n)
- 3.85 alarm** (v) /ə'lɑːm/  
cause sb to feel worried or afraid • *I don't want to alarm you, but isn't that smoke coming from your flat?* > alarm (n), alarming (adj), alarmingly (adv)



- 3.86 assault** (v) /ə'sɔːlt/  
affect sth negatively and unpleasantly  
● *It could be argued that extreme political correctness assaults the rights to freedom of speech.* > assault (n)
- 3.87 abuse** (v) /ə'bjʊːs/  
treat sth/sb in a way that harms them ● *In our country, strict punishments are imposed on people who abuse children.* > abuse (n), abusive (adj), abusively (adv)
- 3.88 boycott** (v) /'bɔɪkɒt/  
refuse to buy or use sth from a particular source as a form of protest ● *Activists are encouraging the public to boycott companies which are damaging the environment.* > boycott (n)
- 3.89 mount** (v) /maʊnt/  
organise and carry out ● *The school mounted a photographic exhibition to raise awareness on social issues.*
- 3.90 occupy** (v) /'ɒkjupaɪ/  
take control of an area or country, etc.  
● *Greece as we know it was occupied over the centuries by numerous forces, including Romans, Goths, Franks, Venetians, Turks and Germans.* > occupation (n)
- 3.91 picket** (v) /'pɪkɪt/  
stand outside a workplace to protest and try to persuade others to join a strike ● *Flights were disrupted for weeks when striking workers picketed the airport.* > picket (n)
- 3.92 stage** (v) /steɪdʒ/  
organise and participate in sth ● *Campaigners staged a protest march during the presidential visit.* > stage (n)
- 3.93 rally** (n) /'ræli/  
a large organised public protest meeting ● *The word spread rapidly throughout social media, ensuring a mass turnout at the rally against education cuts.* > rally (v)
- 3.94 human chain** (n) /'hjuːmən tʃeɪn/  
a long line of people linked together either by holding hands, or to complete a task jointly  
● *Local residents formed a human chain to carry the buckets of water up the hill to put out the wildfire.*
- 3.95 apathetic** (adj) /,æpə'θetɪk/  
disinterested or not caring ● *How can you be so apathetic about people who are starving? Why don't you care?* > apathy (n), apathetically (adv)
- 3.96 callous** (adj) /'kæləs/  
unkind and without sympathy or feeling for others ● *Patrick was offended by his colleagues callous remarks about the Irish.* > callousness (n), callously (adv)
- 3.97 just** (adj) /dʒʌst/  
fair and morally correct ● *Mrs Jones had just cause to complain about illegally parked cars blocking the wheelchair ramp.* > justice (n), justly (adv)  
🔗 Opp: unjust
- 3.98 benevolent** (adj) /bə'nevələnt/  
willing to help and be generous towards others  
● *The centre receives financial support from a benevolent local businessman.* > benevolence (n)
- 3.99 corrupt** (adj) /kə'rʌpt/  
dishonestly using your position to get money or some advantage ● *Democracy is under threat from corrupt political practices.* > corrupt (v), corruption (n), corruptible (adj)
- 3.100 merciful** (adj) /'mɜːsɪfl/  
willing to be kind to and forgive people in your power ● *Henry VIII could hardly be considered a merciful ruler when he had his own wives executed.* > mercy (n), mercifully (adv)  
🔗 Opp: merciless
- 3.101 brutal** (adj) /'bruːtl/  
cruel, violent and without feeling ● *He was sentenced to life imprisonment for the brutal attack on the school.* > brutalise (v), brute (n), brutality (n), brutally (adv)
- 3.102 humane** (adj) /hjuː'meɪn/  
showing compassion and kindness to people and animals ● *Private care home should be regulated to ensure the elderly are living in humane conditions.* > humanity (n), humanely (adv)  
🔗 Opp: inhumane
- 3.103 prejudiced** (adj) /'predʒədɪst/  
having an unreasonable hatred of a particular group of people ● *Fear and ignorance can often lead to prejudiced views against other nationalities.* > prejudice (n)
- 3.104 catch sb red-handed** (expr) /kætʃ 'sʌmbədi ,red'hændɪd/  
catch sb in the act of doing sth wrong ● *The bank cashier was fired when she was caught red-handed stealing cash as she loaded the ATM.*
- 3.105 fall back on** (phr v) /fɔːl bæk ɒn/  
use as a source of support ● *Living on a minimum wage, Jimmy had no savings to fall back on when his car needed repairs.*
- 3.106 run up against** (phr v) /rʌn ʌp ə'genst/  
encounter; face ● *When the area was designated as a refugee camp, the authorities ran up against complaints from the local community.*
- 3.107 come down to** (phr v) /kʌm daʊn tuː/  
be dependent on ● *Whether he stays in the country or not all comes down to whether he can make a decent living here.*

- 3.108 do away with** (phr v) /du ə'wei wiθ/  
put an end to • *There was a public outcry at the government's decision to do away with some popular TV channels.*

### Phrasal verbs

band together	run up against
round up	come down to
fall back on	do away with

- 3.109 confront** (v) /kən'frʌnt/  
face up to and deal with directly • *Confronted by a line of police, the hooligans following the peaceful demonstration retreated into the back streets.* > confrontation (n)
- 3.110 jump on the bandwagon** (expr) /dʒʌmp ɒn ðə 'bændwægən/  
join others doing sth that is currently fashionable to be seen to do so • *Anna had never really cared about animals; she was just jumping on the vegetarian bandwagon to seek approval from her new boyfriend.*
- 3.111 bury your head in the sand** (expr) /'beri ʒɔ:(r) hed ɪn ðə sænd/  
ignore a problem and refuse to admit it is there • *If politicians continue to bury their heads in the sand regarding violence among football fans, the problem will only get worse.*
- 3.112 bring out the best in sb** (expr) /brɪŋ aʊt ðə best ɪn 'sʌmbədi/  
cause sb to show their best qualities • *A few days' work at the homeless shelter has brought out the best in Maria.*
- 3.113 fall on deaf ears** (expr) /fɔ:l ɒn def iəz/  
be ignored • *Although several storm warnings were issued, the advice fell on deaf ears and motorists got trapped in snowdrifts.*
- 3.114 get behind sth** (expr) /get bɪ'haɪnd 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
support sth • *If the United Nations doesn't get behind the immigration crisis, our country will never be able to deal with it alone.*
- 3.115 spare no effort** (expr) /speə(r) nəʊ 'efət/  
do as much as possible to achieve sth • *The firefighter spared no effort and rescued the puppy from the bottom of the well.*
- 3.116 obedience** (n) /ə'bi:diəns/  
willingness to follow orders and behave as you are told to • *As Julie's dog wouldn't listen to a word she said, she had to send it to obedience training.* > obey (v), obedient (adj), obediently (adv)  
📎 Opp: disobedience

- 3.117 biased** (adj) /'baɪəst/  
tending to favour one thing over another • *In view of the referee's unfair decision, he was clearly biased towards the home team.* > bias (n)  
📎 Opp: unbiased
- 3.118 privileged** (adj) /'prɪvəlɪdʒd/  
having more rights or opportunities than others • *Until a few decades ago, only privileged families had the luxury of travelling abroad on holiday.* > privilege (n)  
📎 Opp: underprivileged
- 3.119 whistle-blower** (n) /'wɪsl 'bləʊə(r)/  
a person who alerts people to the fact that a company or person in power is doing sth illegal • *The politician's downfall was due to a whistle-blower's press release.*

### People

asylum seeker	feminist
benefactor	human chain
beneficiary	middleman
breadwinner	philanthropist
bunch	recipient
coastguard	signee
donor	whistle-blower

## Grammar

pages 41-42-43

- 3.120 polling station** (n) /'pəʊlɪŋ 'steɪʃn/  
a place where people go to cast their vote in an election • *On election day, our local primary schools are used as polling stations.*
- 3.121 abolition** (n) /,æbə'liʃn/  
the end of a law; the end of sth by order of a law • *Human rights groups are pushing for the abolition of the death penalty in countries where it still exists.* > abolish (v)
- 3.122 abolish** (v) /ə'bɒlɪʃ/  
end sth officially, by order of law • *The death penalty was completely abolished in the UK in 1998.* > abolition (n)
- 3.123 corruption** (n) /kə'rʌpʃn/  
illegal behaviour by sb who exploits their position of power for personal gain • *A special force was set up to clamp down on corruption among tax officials.* > corrupt (v), corrupt (adj), corruptible (adj)
- 3.124 obliterate** (v) /ə'blɪtəreɪt/  
destroy or remove all evidence of sth • *The rain had obliterated the tell-tale tyre marks from the crash scene.* > obliteration (n)

- 3.125 feminist** (n) /'femənɪst/  
sb who believes in and supports that women's and men's rights and opportunities should be equal • *Not everyone seems to have grasped that feminists stand up for equality of men's rights as well as women's.* > feminism (n), feminist (adj)
- 3.126 breadwinner** (n) /'bredwɪnə(r)/  
the main wage-earner of a household  
• *When Dad lost his job, Mum became the sole breadwinner who had to support all of us.*
- 3.127 aftershock** (n) /'ɑːftəʃɒk/  
an earthquake that follows as a consequence of a (usually) larger one • *After the 6.5 Richter earthquake, the townspeople spent the night in the park, fearing further damage by aftershocks.*
- 3.128 asylum seeker** (n) /ə'saɪləm 'siːkə(r)/  
sb who requests permission to stay safely in another country after being forced to leave their own in danger of their lives • *Amongst the crowd of immigrants at the port were a number of asylum seekers waiting to have their passports and documents checked.*
- 3.129 coastguard** (n) /'kəʊstgɑːd/  
the organisation responsible for policing activities at sea near the coastline and rescuing ships in trouble • *Realising we would never make it to shore without the engine, we sent up a distress flare which was seen by the coastguard.*
- 3.130 ordeal** (n) /ɔː'diːl/  
a very difficult experience • *My first day at work after leaving school was quite an ordeal.*
- 3.131 monsoon** (n) /,mɒn'suːn/  
a seasonal period of heavy rains in southern Asia • *Low-lying villages in Bangladesh are liable to flooding during the monsoon season.*
- 3.132 fake** (adj) /feɪk/  
made to appear to sth else; not real • *He was arrested at the Australian border for trying to enter the country with a fake identity.* > fake (v), fake (n)
- 3.133 solidarity** (n) /,sɒlɪ'dæərəti/  
support for one group by another who share the same values • *Several other public services were striking in solidarity with the hospital staff.*
- 3.134 abstain** (v) /əb'steɪn/  
choose not to do sth which you might normally do • *Alistair abstained from voting in the election as he could agree with either of the candidates.* > abstention (n), abstinence (n)

## Speaking

page 45

- 3.135 underprivileged** (adj) /ˌʌndə'prɪvəlɪdʒd/  
with less money or opportunities than others  
• *What support is there for underprivileged families?*  
✎ Opp: privileged

### Feelings: adjectives

altruistic	impoverished
apathetic	just
benevolent	matter-of-fact
biased	merciful
brutal	prejudiced
callous	selfless
conscious	soul-crushing
corrupt	straitened
harrowing	traumatic
humane	underprivileged
humbling	

## Writing

pages 46-47

- 3.136 huddle** (v) /'hʌdl/  
sit with your arms and legs close to your body for protection or warmth; sit or stand close together with others • *We all huddled round the campfire and told ghost stories.*  
> huddle (n)
- 3.137 matter-of-fact** (adj) /'mætə(r) əv fækt/  
plain-speaking and practical without expression of emotion • *She was remarkably matter-of-fact about having fled the horrors of war.*
- 3.138 stature** (n) /'stætʃə(r)/  
height • *For one so large in stature, he was rather a coward.*
- 3.139 commend** (v) /kə'mend/  
praise sb for doing sth • *The group were commended for their successful fundraising efforts.* > commendation (n), commendable (adj), commendably (adv)
- 3.140 no big deal** (expr) /nəʊ bɪg diːl/  
sth that is unimportant or not a problem  
• *Sure, I'll look after your pets when your away; it's no big deal.*
- 3.141 twist sb's arm** (expr) /twɪst'sʌmbədɪz ɑːm/  
persuade sb who is reluctant • *If you twist Joe's arm, I'm sure he'll give you a lift to the station.*
- 3.142 needless to say** (expr) /'niːdləs tə seɪ/  
as is already understood • *Needless to say, none of us had even read the book before we saw the film.*

- 3.143 mainstream** (adj) /'meɪnstri:m/  
broadly accepted as normal by the majority  
• *Michele prefers obscure indie films to mainstream Hollywood culture.*  
➤ mainstream (n)
- 3.144 marginalise** (v) /'mɑ:dʒɪnəlaɪz/  
make sb feel insignificant and not part of a group • *We made sure the new student was invited to the party so that she wouldn't feel marginalised.* ➤ margin (n), marginal (adj), marginally (adv)
- 3.145 inspirational** (adj) /,ɪnspə'reɪʃən/  
that gives inspiration • *The president's opening speech was truly inspirational.*  
➤ inspire (v), inspiration (n)
- 3.146 follow in sb's footsteps** (expr) /'fɒləʊ ɪn 'sʌmbədiz 'fʊtstɛp/  
choose the same job or the same way of life as sb else, usually a family member, did or does • *Ruth surprised us all by studying art when she was expected to follow in her parents' footsteps and run the family hotel.*
- 3.147 make your mark** (expr) /meɪk jɔ:(r) mɑ:k/  
have an important effect on sth • *You have to be particularly talented or well-connected to make your mark in society.*
- 3.148 enrich** (v) /ɪn'ri:tʃ/  
improve the quality of sth • *She hoped that her children's books would enrich the lives of their readers.* ➤ enrichment (n)

### Expressions

bring out the best in sb  
bury your head in the sand  
catch sb red-handed  
fall on deaf ears  
follow in sb's footsteps  
get behind sth  
jump on the bandwagon  
make your mark  
needless to say  
no big deal  
reap the benefit  
spare no effort  
turn your back on sb/sth  
twist sb's arm

## Video 3: Dirty Energy

page 48

- 3.149 power plant** (n) /'paʊə(r) plɑ:nt/  
a building where electric power is produced  
• *Residents living near the coal-fired power plant have complained of health problems due to pollution.*
- 3.150 injustice** (n) /ɪn'dʒʌstɪs/  
unfairness or an unfair act • *19th century novelists drew attention to the social injustices of the time.*  
📝 Opp: justice
- 3.151 outrage** (n) /'aʊtreɪdʒ/  
sth very shocking which angers people  
• *Environmental groups said the plans to build the runway across the country park were an outrage.* ➤ outrageous (adj), outrageously (adv)
- 3.152 banner** (n) /'bænə(r)/  
a large piece of fabric or paper with a message written on it showing support for a cause  
• *Demonstrators carried banners outside the court calling for the woman's release.*
- 3.153 slogan** (n) /'sləʊɡən/  
a catchphrase designed to attract attention and get a message across quickly • *Protesters carried banners bearing anti-war slogans outside parliament.*
- 3.154 roadblock** (n) /'rəʊdb্লɒk/  
an obstacle that stops a plan progressing  
• *We're facing so many legal roadblocks that I don't think we'll ever manage to open our restaurant.*

### Places/Locations

pocket	power plant
polling station	

### Feelings: nouns

conscience	obedience
dignity	outrage
injustice	sentiment
narcissism	stigma



# 4 Express Yourself

## Reading

pages 50-51

- 4.1 branding** (n) /'brændɪŋ/  
promoting an attractive name and an image for a product or service to attract customers  
• *Clever branding should attract customers without pushy marketing techniques.* > brand (v), brand (n)
- 4.2 host** (n) /həʊst/  
a large number of things/people • *Our website features a host of electronic goods at down-to-earth prices.* > host (v)
- 4.3 goatherd** (n) /'gəʊθɜːd/  
sb whose job it is to look after a herd of goats  
• *Alex dreams of living a simple life as a goatherd tending his herd in the mountains.*
- 4.4 conceivably** (adv) /kən'siːvəbli/  
imaginably; seemingly possible • *It was conceivably the worst film I've ever seen.*  
> conceive (v), conceivable (adj)
- 4.5 mind-boggling** (adj) /maɪnd 'bɒɡlɪŋ/  
very surprising; hard to imagine • *Using clever hashtags, Sharon has collected a mind-boggling number of followers on social media.*
- 4.6 entertain** (v) /,entə'teɪn/  
consider • *Until a few years ago, most people would never entertain the thought of 'chatting' to strangers online.* > entertainer (n), entertaining (adj)
- 4.7 lay the foundation for** (expr) /leɪ ðə faʊn'deɪʃn fɔː(r)/  
create the ideas and basic structures to develop a larger initiative • *Ancient Greeks laid the foundations for democracy.*
- 4.8 empirical** (adj) /ɪm'pɪrɪkl/  
based on observations or experience • *Only through accurate and qualitative research can scientists collect empirical data to prove or disprove a theory.* > empiricism (n), empirically (adv)
- 4.9 randomly** (adv) /'rændəmli/  
by chance; in no special order • *The practice of randomly targeting potential clients by phone must be the most annoying form of marketing.* > random (adj)
- 4.10 popularise** (v) /'pɒpjələraɪz/  
make sth popular • *The interactive exhibition was designed to popularise museums by using state-of-the-art technology.* > popularity (n), popular (adj)
- 4.11 parlour game** (n) /'pɑːlə(r) geɪm/  
a word game or miming game, etc. played at home • *It's fun to put away the tablets and have an evening playing parlour games with friends occasionally.*
- 4.12 precursor** (n) /priː'kɜːsə(r)/  
sth/sb that preceded sth/sb else and affects its progress • *The teachings of Pythagoras were a precursor to European culture.*
- 4.13 to all intents and purposes** (expr) /tə ɔːl ɪn'tents ənd 'pɜːpəsɪz/  
more or less; almost entirely • *Like it or not, Facebook has become, to all intents and purposes, a major communication platform.*
- 4.14 applicable** (adj) /ə'plɪkəbl/  
that applies to or affects sb/sth; relevant (to sb/sth) • *Despite being applicable to all public places, the non-smoking laws seem to be ignored in many cafes and restaurants.*  
> apply (v), application (n), applicant (n)
- 4.15 elaborate** (v) /ɪ'læbəreɪt/  
expand on a point by going into details • *Tania simply announced her resignation and refused to elaborate on her reasons.* > elaboration (n), elaborate (adj), elaborately (adv)
- 4.16 inherent** (adj) /ɪn'hɪərənt/  
that is an intrinsic part of sth, therefore can't be taken out of it • *Politeness was an inherent part of Robert's upbringing.* > inhere (v), inherently (adv)
- 4.17 mentality** (n) /men'tæləti/  
the general way of thinking of an individual or group • *I was utterly appalled at the mentality of the villagers regarding animals.* > mental (adj), mentally (adv)
- 4.18 intrigued** (adj) /ɪn'triːɡd/  
so interested that you want to find out more about sth • *I was intrigued to know how Francis had set up his website so quickly.*  
> intrigue (v), intrigue (n), intriguing (adj), intriguingly (adv)
- 4.19 commodity** (n) /kə'mɒdəti/  
sth that is produced for sale • *How can we put a price on our time when it's our most irreplaceable commodity?*
- 4.20 cheerily** (adv) /'tʃɪərɪli/  
happily; in a cheerful way • *Smiling cheerily, Paul announced that he was dropping out of university to travel the world.* > cheer (v), cheer (n), cheery (adj)

- 4.21 connectedness** (n) /kə'nektɪdnəs/  
the sense of having a connection with others and being a part of a group • *Social media may offer a sense of connectedness to people living in remote areas.* > connect (v), connection (n)
- 4.22 dissimilar** (adj) /dɪ'sɪmɪlə(r)/  
not similar • *Katie was finding it hard to settle down in China as the culture was so dissimilar to that of Wales.* > dissimilarity (n)  
📖 Opp: similar
- 4.23 transmittable** (adj) /trænz'mɪtə,bəl/  
that can be passed on or transmitted from sb/sth to sb/sth else • *The common cold is caused by highly transmittable infections.* > transmit (v), transmission (n)
- 4.24 intrinsic** (adj) /ɪn'trɪnsɪk/  
that is a basic part of sth/sb which can't be taken out • *Email has become an intrinsic part of business communications.* > intrinsically (adv)
- 4.25 essence** (n) /'esns/  
the important basic quality central to what or how sth is • *In essence, people not using social media find it increasingly difficult to stay informed about certain events.* > essential (adj), essentially (adv)

## Vocabulary

pages 52-53-54

- 4.26 kin** (n) /kɪn/  
people you are related to; family members • *Police are trying to trace the victim's next of kin.* > kinship (n), kindred (adj)
- 4.27 board** (n) /bɔ:d/  
an official decision-making group in a company or organisation • *The staffing cuts will be discussed at the next meeting of the board of directors.*
- 4.28 cabinet** (n) /'kæbɪnət/  
a team of members of parliament chosen to make decisions on policy • *The Prime Minister is meeting with the cabinet ministers to discuss tax reforms.*
- 4.29 faction** (n) /'fækʃn/  
a small part of a group whose beliefs or aims differ from those of the wider group • *Trouble broke out between rival factions in the stadium after the match.* > factional (adj)
- 4.30 lobby** (n) /'lɒbi/  
a pressure group who try to influence decision makers on a particular issue • *Community groups organised a lobby against the closure of the local school.* > lobby (v), lobbyist (n)

- 4.31 brigade** (n) /brɪ'geɪd/  
a group of people who share a common opinion; a unit of soldiers in an army • *Desmond finally gave up cigarettes under pressure from the anti-smoking brigade at work.*
- 4.32 entourage** (n) /'ɒntʊrɑ:ʒ/  
a group of people who travel with or follow an important person • *The actor entered the hotel surrounded by his entourage of security staff.*
- 4.33 fraternity** (n) /frə'tɜ:nəti /  
a close-knit group formed around a particular ideal or shared experience • *Dramatic fluctuations in currency rates have raised concerns among the banking fraternity.*
- 4.34 squad** (n) /skwɒd/  
a group of police or soldiers working together on a specific task; a large group of players from which a team is selected • *The rowdy demonstrators were turned back by the riot squad.*
- 4.35 cartel** (n) /kɑ:'tel/  
a group of companies who agree to price fixing to maximise profits • *The dairy cartel has ensured that milk prices are much the same across all the supermarkets.*
- 4.36 syndicate** (n) /'sɪndɪkət/  
a group of companies or people who work together towards a particular objective • *The politician had links with the largest crime syndicate in Mexico.*
- 4.37 union** (n) /'ju:niən/  
an organisation established to protect workers needs and negotiate improved conditions • *Flights were delayed due to a strike by the baggage handlers' union.* > unite (v), unify (v), unionise (v), unionisation (n)
- 4.38 dynasty** (n) /'dɪnəsti/  
a long line of rulers from the same family group • *The Tudor dynasty ruled England for centuries.* > dynastic (adj)
- 4.39 platoon** (n) /plə'tu:ɪn/  
a small group of 10-12 soldiers that is part of a larger group • *Two platoons advanced on the enemy camp in the middle of the night.*
- 4.40 diaspora** (n) /daɪ'æspərə/  
the movement of people from one ethnic group to another country • *The annual Notting Hill festival brings out the music and spirit of the Jamaican diaspora.*
- 4.41 horde** (n) /hɔ:d/  
a huge crowd of people • *Miltiades gave the command to charge upon the horde of Persians advancing across the plain of Marathon.*

- 4.42 troupe** (n) /tru:p/ a team of performers • *The troupe of acrobats gave a breathtaking performance.* > trouper (n)
- 4.43 posse** (n) /'pɒsi/ a small group of people with a similar purpose or interest • *Eagerly awaiting the star's arrival, a small posse of photographers stood outside the theatre.*
- 4.44 throng** (n) /θrɒŋ/ a large crowd • *Throng of people lined the streets to watch the parade.* > throng (v)

### Groups

brigade	faction	posse
cabinet	fraternity	squad
cartel	horde	syndicate
cluster	host	throng
diaspora	kin	troupe
dynasty	lobby	union
entourage	platoon	

- 4.45 be thick as thieves** (expr) /bi θɪk əz θi:vz/ be extremely friendly with each other, often in a conspiratorial way • *Beth and Judy are thick as thieves; anything you say to one always gets back to the other.*
- 4.46 get along famously** (expr) /get ə'lɒŋ 'feɪməsli/ have a very good relationship • *Though a little worried about meeting her new colleagues, Christine got on famously with them from the first day.*
- 4.47 have a nodding acquaintance with sb** (expr) /həv ə 'nɒdɪŋ ə'kweɪntəns wɪθ 'sʌmbədi/ know sb very casually and not closely • *We have a nodding acquaintance with most of our neighbours, but only know a few of them by name.*
- 4.48 one-sided** (adj) /wʌn 'saɪ,dɪd/ that only involves or benefits one person • *The match was entirely one-sided as United had no chance of winning with two players sent off in the first half.*
- 4.49 avatar** (n) /'ævətɑ:(r)/ an image of a person of animal, etc. that represents a user on a website or game • *Vicky uses a photo of her favourite pet as an avatar on social media.*
- 4.50 bio** (n) /'baɪəʊ/ a record of your qualifications and work experience; a CV • *Colin had sent copies of his bio to over 20 companies before he received even one job offer.*
- 4.51 clickbait** (n) /'kɪkbeɪt/ images and words, etc. on the internet which attract users to open links to particular sites • *It may be hard to ignore those cute kitty videos, but most of them are purely clickbait from advertisers.*

- 4.52 crowdfunding** (n) /'kraʊdfʌndɪŋ/ the act of raising money for a project by attracting large numbers of small donations, usually through social media sites • *Valerie used crowdfunding to pay for her awareness-raising documentary about the children's home.* > crowdfund (v)
- 4.53 emoticon** (n) /ɪ'məʊtɪkən/ a set of symbols used in text messages to represent a facial expression or feeling • *It is inadvisable to include smileys and other emoticons in a business email.*
- 4.54 meme** (n) /mi:m/ an image or saying that is transmitted quickly on internet and adapted to various situations to make it funny • *While some memes can be funny, most tend to lack originality, so I usually delete them – and never share such trivia!*
- 4.55 tag** (v) /tæg/ add a link with a user's name to a photo on social media • *Kindly ask my permission before tagging me on a photo next time; my friends thought I was in Rome with you.* > tag (n)
- 4.56 trend** (v) /trend/ be a popular subject of discussion currently on social media • *Though her family have requested privacy, the singer's death is currently trending on social media.* > trend (n), trendy (adj)
- 4.57 analogy** (n) /ə'nælədʒi/ a comparison of sth with sth else that is similar to give an example • *Our biology teacher drew an analogy between the human body and a machine.* > analogous (adj)
- 4.58 contradict** (v) /,kɒntrə'dɪkt/ say sth that is the opposite of what has been said to correct sb or show disagreement • *It was obvious they were about to break up when they were constantly contradicting each other.* > contradiction (n), contradictory (adj)
- 4.59 detract from sth** (phr v) /dɪ'trækt frəm 'sʌmθɪŋ/ take away from the enjoyment of sth • *The unsightly forest of wind turbines detracted from the beauty of the island.* > detractor (n)
- 4.60 diversify** (v) /daɪ'vɜ:sɪfaɪ/ begin to include a wider range of things to become more varied • *The lifestyle of the islanders has diversified over the year through the influence of foreign tourists.* > diversity (n), diversification (n), diverse (adj), diversely (adv)
- 4.61 homogenise** (v) /hə'mɒdʒənaɪz/ change sth so that all its features blend and become similar • *The spread of chain stores has homogenised shopping centres across the UK so they are almost all identical.* > homogenisation (n), homogeneity (n), homogenous (adj), homogenised (adj)



- 4.62 proximate** (adj) /'prɒksɪmət/  
closest in distance or time • *Brake failure was the proximate cause of the accident.*  
➤ proximity (n)
- 4.63 shrinkage** (n) /'ʃrɪŋkɪdʒ/  
the process of getting smaller; the extent to which sth reduces in size • *Due to shrinkage in the wash, my new sweater was too small to wear.* ➤ shrink (v), shrunken (adj), shrinking (adj)
- 4.64 telecommunications** (n) /,telɪkə,mjuːnɪ'keɪfɪnz/  
the communications between people using technological means • *Advances in telecommunications have meant that we can now get in touch with people almost anywhere at anytime.*
- 4.65 globalisation** (n) /,gləʊbəlaɪ'zeɪʃn/  
the worldwide spread of trade and production of the same goods and services in many countries • *Traditional craftsmen blame the increase in globalisation for their loss of business.* ➤ globalise (v), global (adj), globally (adv)
- 4.66 connectivity** (n) /,kɒnek'tɪvɪti/  
the state of being connected • *Before you buy that country house, check the internet connectivity in the area.* ➤ connect (v), connection (n)
- 4.67 get hold of sb** (expr) /get həʊld əv'sʌmbədi/  
manage to contact sb • *I couldn't get hold of Nigel this morning; he was in meetings for hours.*
- 4.68 in the loop** (expr) /ɪn ðə luːp/  
involved in a group dealing with or sharing information about a particular issue • *Peter attends all the board meetings so he keeps in the loop with management decisions.*  
📎 Opp: out of the loop
- 4.69 touch base (with sb)** (expr) /tʌtʃ baɪs wɪθ'sʌmbədi/  
make contact with sb, often after being out of touch • *David hadn't heard from his brother in months, so he decided to phone to touch base with him.*
- 4.70 disassemble** (v) /,dɪsə'sembl/  
take sth to pieces; spread apart in different directions • *The technician disassembled the laptop to pinpoint the problem.*  
➤ disassembler (n)
- 4.71 deactivate** (v) /,dɪ:'æktɪveɪt/  
cause sth to stop functioning • *If you use the incorrect PIN number too often, the bank will deactivate your card.* ➤ deactivation (n)
- 4.72 discontinue** (v) /,dɪskən'tɪnjuː/  
stop manufacturing a product; stop doing sth • *Sales of the phone have been discontinued following vast numbers of customer complaints.*  
➤ discontinuity (n), discontinuous (adj)
- 4.73 caption** (n) /'kæpʃn/  
words written on or below an image • *Cynthia always inserts hilarious captions on her Instagram photos.* ➤ caption (v)
- 4.74 communal** (adj) /kə'mjuːnl/  
shared by a number of people • *As a student, Anita rented a room in a flat and shared a communal kitchen and bathroom.*  
➤ communalism (n), communally (adv)
- 4.75 cultivate** (v) /'kʌltɪveɪt/  
develop sth, such as support, friendship, etc. • *We aim to cultivate loyalty and trust with our clients.* ➤ cultivation (n), cultivated (adj)
- 4.76 nourish** (v) /'nʌrɪʃ/  
help sth to grow or develop; keep sth/sb alive and healthy by feeding them • *Face-to-face communications beats virtual contact when it comes to nourishing a relationship.*  
➤ nourishment (n), nourishing (adj)
- 4.77 comrade** (n) /'kɒmreɪd/  
sb that you serve together with in a military group or fellow member of a socialist or communist party • *Granddad gets together with his old army comrades every year on Remembrance Day.* ➤ comradeship (n), comradely (adj)
- 4.78 confidant** (n) /'kɒnfɪdənt/  
sb that you trust with your personal secrets • *Robert has been my closest friend and confidant for years.* ➤ confide (v)  
📎 Also: confidante
- 4.79 confederate** (n) /kən'fedərət/  
sb who helps or conspires with sb to do sth • *Police have arrested one of the terrorists, but his confederates are still at large.*  
➤ confederate (adj)
- 4.80 counsellor** (n) /'kaʊnsələ(r)/  
sb who offers specialist advice to others • *Meg and Tom sought the advice of a guidance counsellor in an effort to save their marriage.* ➤ counsel (v), counselling (n)
- 4.81 overhaul** (n) /'əʊvəhɔːl/  
a review of a system to assess and repair or change it • *Our country's education system is outmoded and needs a complete overhaul.*  
➤ overhaul (v)
- 4.82 infrastructure** (n) /'ɪnfəstrʌktʃə(r)/  
the basic networks, such as roads, power, water supply, hospitals, schools, etc. that help a country or organisation function • *The complex infrastructure of the multi-national giant means that any new plans take months to implement.* ➤ infrastructural (adj)
- 4.83 framework** (n) /'freɪmwɜːk/  
the basic ideas or structure that a system is built around • *Discussions are underway regarding the legal framework for environmental protection.*



- 4.84 underpinning** (n) /ˌʌndəˈpɪnɪŋ/  
sth that supports the basis of an idea or building • *Though I disagree with him, the underpinnings of his theory are quite logical.*  
➤ underpin (v)

### Expressions

be thick as thieves  
get along famously  
get hold of sb  
going forward  
have a nodding acquaintance with sb  
in the loop  
lay the foundation for  
to all intents and purposes  
touch base (with sb)

### Networking: nouns

attention-seeking	framework
avatar	globalisation
bio	infrastructure
branding	medium
caption	meme
clickbait	mentality
commodity	newsfeed
confederate	norm
confidant	overhaul
connectedness	small talk
connectivity	telecommunications
counsellor	trolling
crowdfunding	underpinning
emoticon	vehicle
encounter	

## Grammar

pages 55-56-57

- 4.85 viral** (adj) /ˈvaɪrəl/  
that is spread rapidly over the internet • *News of the bombing went viral within minutes on Twitter.*
- 4.86 small talk** (n) /smɔːl tɔːk/  
polite conversation about trivial everyday subjects • *After half an hour of small talk, Stan realised he had very little common with his new colleague.*
- 4.87 trolling** (n) /trɒlɪŋ/  
writing offensive or annoying messages on an online discussion • *She was quite upset by the trolling attack that followed her objective comment on Facebook.* ➤ troll (v), troll (n)
- 4.88 far-reaching** (adj) /fɑː ˈriːtʃɪŋ/  
with long-term consequences • *Mass immigration of people from different cultures will have far-reaching consequences for our society.*
- 4.89 embrace** (v) /ɪmˈbreɪs/  
include within sth • *'Copyright' embraces legal rights related to books, films, plays and music.*  
➤ embrace (n)
- 4.90 formative** (adj) /ˈfɔːmətɪv/  
affecting the development of sth • *Oliver spent his formative years in an orphanage.* ➤ form (v), formation (n)
- 4.91 monocultural** (adj) /ˌmɒnəˈkʌltʃərəl/  
having only a single belief system, way of life, etc. • *Having never left her hometown in Ireland, Siobhan had a completely monocultural upbringing.*  
➤ monoculture (n)

## Listening

page 58

- 4.92 notoriously** (adv) /nəʊˈtɔːriəsli/  
well-known for negative reasons • *My internet provider is notoriously unreliable.* ➤ notoriety (n), notorious (adj)
- 4.93 incidentally** (adv) /ˌɪnsɪˈdentli/  
by the way; used to add extra information in passing • *Incidentally, I notice we have a common acquaintance in Canada on Facebook.* ➤ incidental (adj)
- 4.94 non-verbal** (adj) /nɒn ˈvɜːbl/  
without spoken words • *You can often tell if someone is lying by their non-verbal signals.*

### Adverbs

cheerily	notoriously
conceivably	randomly
incidentally	

## Writing

pages 60-61

- 4.95 blatant** (adj) /ˈbleɪtənt/  
frank and open, without regard to what others feel or think • *He made a blatant attempt to win the boss's favour.* ➤ blatantly (adv)
- 4.96 attention-seeking** (n) /əˈtenʃn ˈsiːkɪŋ/  
doing sth in order to receive recognition from others • *Constantly posting new selfies is the most irritating form of attention-seeking.*
- 4.97 medium** (n) /ˈmiːdiəm/  
way or means of expressing sth • *Television is rapidly becoming the least credible news medium.*  
📎 Plural: media

- 4.98 vehicle** (n) /'vi:əkl/  
means of achieving or expressing sth  
• *Clever memes are used as a vehicle to attract potential customers to her online shop.*
- 4.99 bombard** (v) /bɒm'ba:d/  
give large amounts of sth at once • *The moment she signed the online petition she was bombarded by spam emails.*  
➤ bombardment (n)
- 4.100 newsfeed** (n) /'nju:z, fi:d/  
a constant updating list of stories, comments, photos, etc. on social media sites • *I had to block notifications from my daily newsfeed as there was too much repetition of information to bother with.*
- 4.101 self-absorbed** (adj) /self əb'zɔ:bd/  
only interested in yourself • *The morning train was filled with self-absorbed commuters wired up to their personal listening devices.*  
➤ self-absorption (n)
- 4.102 narcissistic** (adj) /,nɑ:sɪ'sɪstɪk/  
being too preoccupied with admiring your own appearance • *The band's performance would have been fantastic were it not for the overacting of the narcissistic lead singer.*  
➤ narcissism (n), narcissist (n)
- 4.103 inflated** (adj) /ɪn'fleɪtɪd/  
exaggerated; made to seem more important than is really the case • *Ivan has an inflated view of his own importance, but is no better than any other group member.* ➤ inflate (v), inflation (n)
- 4.104 norm** (n) /nɔ:m/  
usual or accepted standard of behaviour  
• *Multicultural classrooms are becoming the norm in some societies.* ➤ normality (n), normal (adj), normally (adv)
- 4.105 shudder** (v) /'ʃʌdə(r)/  
shake because of a strong feeling • *Nick shuddered at the thought of the amount of work he still had to do.* ➤ shudder (n)
- 4.106 skew** (v) /skju:/  
cause sth to change so that it becomes distorted or wrong • *The journalist skewed the witness's account of the incident so that it bore no resemblance to what had happened.*
- 4.107 colloquial** (adj) /kə'ləʊkwɪəl/  
slang way of speaking, common to a local area • *Visitors to Newcastle often have problems understanding the colloquial slang which differs widely from that of its Scottish neighbours.* ➤ colloquialism (n)

- 4.108 emotive** (adj) /i'məʊtɪv/  
full of or inspiring emotion • *He wrote an emotive account of his ordeal.* ➤ emotion (n), emotional (adj), emotionless (adj), emotionally (adv)
- 4.109 going forward** (expr) /'gəʊɪŋ 'fɔ:wəd/  
as from now; looking ahead • *Going forward, we expect a gradual improvement in the company's performance.*

### Verbs

bombard	embrace
contradict	entertain
cultivate	homogenize
deactivate	nourish
detract from sth	popularise
disassemble	shudder
discontinue	skew
diversify	tag
elaborate	trend

## Video 4: Elephant Alert

page 62

- 4.110 alert** (n) /ə'lɜ:t/  
a warning signal of impending danger  
• *Smelling smoke when he woke up, the farmer raised the alert and called the fire brigade.* ➤ alert (v), alertness (n), alert (adj)
- 4.111 encounter** (n) /ɪn'kaʊntə(r)/  
an unexpected meeting • *I'll never forget my first encounter with a snake; it was more scared than I was and disappeared fast.*  
➤ encounter (v)
- 4.112 cluster** (n) /'klʌstə(r)/  
a small group of similar things or people in one place • *A cluster of local children were feeding the elephants bathe.* ➤ cluster (v)
- 4.113 plantation** (n) /plɑ:n'teɪʃn/  
a large field where a particular crop is grown  
• *Travelling through Nepal, we saw vast tea plantations on the hillsides.* ➤ plant (v), planter (n)
- 4.114 bulk** (n) /bʌlk/  
a large number or amount of similar things; size or quantity of sth • *The bulk of demand for their products comes from northern Europe.*  
➤ bulky (adj)

- 4.115 cautious** (adj) /'kɔːʃəs/  
careful not to take risks • *We kept a cautious eye on the weather forecast before setting off on our hiking trip.* ➤ caution (v), caution (n), cautiously (adv)
- 4.116 primary** (adj) /'praɪməri/  
basic; main • *Their primary concern was how to keep the animals out of danger.* ➤ primarily (adv)
- 4.117 vicinity** (n) /və'sɪnəti/  
the surrounding area • *There was no phone signal in the vicinity, so we walked for miles to find help.*

### Adjectives

applicable	intrigued
blatant	intrinsic
cautious	mind-boggling
colloquial	monocultural
communal	narcissistic
dissimilar	non-verbal
emotive	one-sided
empirical	primary
far-reaching	proximate
formative	self-absorbed
inflated	transmittable
inherent	viral

## page 65

- 5.1 **spawn** (v) /spɔːn/  
lay eggs • *Frogs usually spawn in the lake at this time of year.* > spawn (n)

## Reading

## pages 66-67

- 5.2 **lure** (n) /lʊə(r)/  
attractiveness; appeal • *The lure of city life drove her to leave her village.* > lure (v)
- 5.3 **smattering** (n) /'smætərɪŋ/  
a very small amount • *Knowing only a smattering of German, Olga had no intention of going to university in Frankfurt.*
- 5.4 **fire** (v) /'faɪə(r)/  
excite or interest sb in sth • *The wildlife documentary fired his interest in travelling to New Guinea.*
- 5.5 **vocation** (n) /vəʊ'keɪʃn/  
a chosen profession or job that you feel suits you • *Leo followed his dreams and found his true vocation as a football coach.* > vocational (adj)
- 5.6 **set your sights on sth** (expr) /sæt ʃɑː(r) saɪts ɒn 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
be determined to achieve sth • *Roxanne knew she had to study hard as she had set her sights on becoming a doctor.*
- 5.7 **on the dole** (expr) /ɒn ðə dəʊl/  
unemployed and living on state benefits • *How long was she on the dole before she found another job?*
- 5.8 **vicious circle** (expr) /'vɪʃəs 'sɜːkl/  
a bad situation that is hard to get out of as one problem leads to another • *They felt trapped in a vicious circle of poverty and unemployment.*
- 5.9 **make your way in life** (expr) /meɪk ʃɑː(r) weɪ ɪn laɪf/  
be successful and make progress • *Betty left home to make her own way in life as soon as she finished her studies.*
- 5.10 **aimlessness** (n) /'eɪmləsənəs/  
the state of having no plans or idea what to do • *The economic crisis has left so many people out of work with feelings of aimlessness.* > aimless (adj), aimlessly (adv)
- 5.11 **ritual** (n) /'rɪtʃuəl/  
a sequence of actions repeated often in the same way • *Steven was used to the daily ritual of commuting to and from work.* > ritual (adj), ritually (adv)

- 5.12 **surrogate** (adj) /'sʌrəɡət/  
substituting for sth else which is not available • *Abandoned a few days after birth, the kitten was fortunately adopted and raised happily by its surrogate family.* > surrogate (n)
- 5.13 **camaraderie** (n) /kəmə'rɑːdəri/  
the friendly bond between people who work together or are in similar circumstances • *A sense of camaraderie developed among the earthquake victims camped in the park.*
- 5.14 **inducement** (n) /ɪn'djuːsmənt/  
sth given to sb to entice them to do sth • *Unfair taxation systems are no inducement for people to start up a new business.* > induce (v)
- 5.15 **turn over a new leaf** (expr) /tɜːn 'əʊvə(r) ə njuː liːf/  
change the way you behave to be a better person • *Upon his release from prison, Jimmy decided to turn over a new leaf and look for an honest job.*
- 5.16 **grassroots** (n) /grɑːs ruːts/  
the ordinary people in a group or society and not their leaders • *At grassroots level, many people are happy to complain, but few are willing to step up and take responsible decisions.*
- 5.17 **fall through the cracks** (expr) /fɔːl θruː ðə kræks/  
not be noticed or dealt with • *Mike had fallen through the cracks of the education system and couldn't read or write until his 20s.*
- 5.18 **rehabilitation** (n) /,rɪə,bɪlɪ'teɪʃn/  
the process of helping sb change to have a healthier or more acceptable lifestyle after a period of illness or addiction, etc. • *Parents of teenage addicts can speak to a counsellor at the drug rehabilitation centre.* > rehabilitate (v)
- 5.19 **entrepreneur** (n) /,ɒntɹəprə'nɜː(r)/  
sb who opens a new type of business to earn money • *As a budding entrepreneur, he founded his first company at the age of 19.* > entrepreneurial (adj)
- 5.20 **alluring** (adj) /ə'luərɪŋ/  
attractive and exciting • *The prospect of a free trip to Iceland seemed most alluring.* > allure (v), alluringly (adv)
- 5.21 **inherently** (adv) /ɪn'hɪərəntli/  
due to the basic nature of sth/sb • *Although Daisy is a charming dog, she is inherently disobedient having had no early training.* > inhere (v), inherent (adj)



- 5.22 conclusive** (adj) /kən'kluːsɪv/  
that proves sth completely • *Without conclusive proof, police cannot arrest the suspected arsonist.* > conclude (v), conclusion (adj), conclusively (adv)
- 5.23 empowerment** (n) /ɪm'pauəmənt/  
the act of enabling sb to become stronger and have more control over their circumstances • *Having a comfortable private office space gave Sarah a sense of empowerment and confidence in her work.* > empower (v)
- 5.24 downward spiral** (expr) /'daʊnwəd 'spairəl/  
a situation that worsens progressively • *The international economy is on a downward spiral, signalling the end of the consumerist era.*
- 5.25 headlong** (adv) /'hedlɒŋ/  
quickly and directly without considering the consequences • *Losing control of her company's budget, she fell headlong into bankruptcy.* > headlong (adj)
- 5.26 juvenile detention centre** (n) /'dʒuːvənəɪl dɪ'tenʃn 'sentə(r)/  
an institute where convicted criminals under 18 years old are imprisoned • *Most of the gang members had already spent a few months in a juvenile detention centre.*
- 5.27 allegiance** (n) /ə'liːdʒəns/  
loyal support • *The new army recruits had to pledge allegiance to their country.*
- 5.28 thick and fast** (expr) /θɪk ənd fɑːst/  
very quickly and in great numbers • *Applications for the job were pouring in thick and fast.*
- 5.29 bespectacled** (adj) /bɪ'spektəklɪd/  
wearing glasses • *A bespectacled librarian directed me to the reference section.*
- 5.30 prospective** (adj) /prə'spektɪv/  
likely to become or do sth • *I sent my CV to dozen of prospective employers.* > prospect (v), prospect (n)
- 5.31 lad** (n) /læd/  
a boy or young man • *A group of lads were hanging around outside the cafe.*
- 5.32 live wire** (n) /laɪv 'waɪə(r)/  
a very energetic person who is hard to control • *Annabelle's daughter is quite shy, but her son is a real live wire.*
- 5.33 garner** (v) /'gɑːnə(r)/  
acquire and gather • *Ted shows off a bit too much in an effort to garner approval from his peers.*
- 5.34 round of applause** (expr) /raʊnd əv ə'plɔːz/  
a short period of people clapping to show approval • *He received a huge round of applause at the end of his speech.*
- 5.35 ridicule** (n) /'rɪdɪkjʊːl/  
comments made to make sb look stupid • *The prime minister was coming in for a great deal of ridicule from the media.* > ridicule (v), ridiculous (adj), ridiculously (adv)
- 5.36 so-called** (adj) /,səʊ 'kɔːld/  
used before a description to show that you don't consider it appropriate • *The so-called 'war on terror' is generating more terrorism than tackling it.*
- 5.37 welfare** (n) /'welfeə(r)/  
financial or other aid that the government gives to people who are unemployed, poor or have special needs, etc. • *Most people would prefer to have a job than live on welfare.*
- 5.38 ghetto** (n) /'getəʊ/  
a poor area of a city where people of the same background tend to be concentrated • *There was more news of rioting and clashes between gangs and police in the Paris ghetto.*
- 5.39 benefit** (n) /'benɪfɪt/  
money that the government pays to people who are unemployed, poor or have special needs, etc. • *Matthew was flat broke when his out-of-work benefit stopped after one year on the dole.* > benefit (v), beneficiary (n), beneficial (adj), beneficially (adv)
- 5.40 intergenerational** (adj) /,ɪntər,dʒɛnə'reɪʃənəl/  
including people of different age groups • *The centre offers intergenerational sessions where older people teach skills to unemployed youths.*
- 5.41 rebellion** (n) /rɪ'beljən/  
resistance against authority; reluctance to obey and attempts to change accepted rules • *Most children show signs of rebellion against their parents from the age of 12 upwards.* > rebel (v), rebel (n), rebellious (adj), rebelliously (adv)
- 5.42 thug** (n) /θʌɡ/  
a violent criminal • *The 'friendly' match was cut short when a group of thugs started throwing things at the players.* > thuggery (n), thuggish (adj)
- 5.43 wannabe** (adj) /'wɒnəbi/  
trying to behave like sb that you want to be the same as • *Outside the studio were hundreds of wannabe singers awaiting their auditions.* > wannabe (n)
- 5.44 gangster** (n) /'gæŋstə(r)/  
a member of a gang of criminals • *The sleazy nightclub was run by a local gangster.*
- 5.45 insight** (n) /'ɪnsaɪt/  
a piece of information or close look that gives you an understanding of sth • *The documentary gave us some insight into the living conditions in Brazilian favelas.* > insightful (adj)

- 5.46 veteran** (n) /'vetərən/  
sb who has had long-term experience in an activity or job • *A Nobel Literature Prize was offered to the veteran singer Bob Dylan.*
- 5.47 twinkle** (n) /'twɪŋkl/  
an amused expression in your eyes • *From the slight twinkle in her eye, I knew my friend was about to make a happy announcement.*  
➤ twinkle (v), twinkling (adj)
- 5.48 specs** (abbrev) /speks/  
glasses; abbreviation of *spectacles* • *Ian can't read anything without his specs on.*
- 5.49 get down to business** (expr) /get daʊn tə 'bɪznəs/  
start work on sth seriously • *Let's get down to business before we run out of time to finish this job.*
- 5.50 reminisce** (v) /,remɪ'nɪs/  
think or talk about past experiences or events • *While my parents used to grumble about their boss, they now reminisce about the good times when they had steady jobs.*  
➤ reminiscence (n), reminiscent (adj)
- 5.51 transition** (n) /træn'zɪʃn/  
the process of changing from one situation to another • *Adolescence is an interesting transition from childhood to adulthood, which is equally puzzling for parents of teenagers.*  
➤ transition (v)
- 5.52 law-abiding** (adj) /lɔ: ə'baɪdɪŋ/  
doing everything by the law; never breaking the law • *Even the most law-abiding drivers fail to notice speed restriction limits where the signs are obscured by trees.*
- 5.53 aspiration** (n) /,æspə'reɪʃn/  
a strong hope to achieve sth • *With aspirations of fame and fortune, he set out for the bright lights of Broadway.* ➤ aspire (v), aspiring (adj), aspirational (adj)

### Attitudes & States: nouns

adversity	fulfilment
aimlessness	ineptness
allegiance	initiative
anguish	irregularity
aspiration	irresolution
attainment	lethargy
awe	lure
backbone	perseverance
camaraderie	prevalence
caste	rebellion
disorientation	recognition
empowerment	stratification
entrepreneur	

## Vocabulary pages 68-69-70

- 5.54 adversity** (n) /əd'vɜ:səti/  
an extremely difficult situation • *In the face of adversity, she turned to her closest friends for support.* ➤ adverse (adj), adversely (adv)
- 5.55 fulfilment** (n) /fʊl'fɪlmənt/  
the achievement of or sense of achieving sth you hoped for • *Seeing her own name above the shop gave Sheila a sense of fulfilment.*  
➤ fulfil (v), fulfilling (adj)
- 5.56 perseverance** (n) /,pɜ:sɪ'vɪərəns/  
the quality of continuing without giving up until you achieve a goal • *It was no easy hike, but we reached the peak through sheer perseverance.* ➤ persevere (v), persevering (adj)
- 5.57 prevalence** (n) /'prevələns/  
the fact of being noticeably common or occurring frequently in a particular place • *With the increasing prevalence of street gangs in the neighbourhood, we decided it was time to move house.* ➤ prevail (v), prevalent (adj), prevailing (adj)
- 5.58 dogged** (adj) /'dɒɡɪd/  
persistent • *Mark never gave up his dogged attempts to make it to the top of his profession.*  
➤ dog (v)
- 5.59 broken home** (n) /'brəʊkən həʊm/  
a family with divorced or separated parents • *The concept of coming from a broken home no longer carries the social stigma of the past and has arguably become the new norm.*
- 5.60 fast track** (n) /fɑ:st træk/  
a quick way to complete or achieve sth • *Hugh's dreams were shattered when he lost the talent contest that he had regarded as a fast track to fame.* ➤ fast-track (v), fast-track (adj)
- 5.61 rosy** (adj) /'rəʊzi/  
likely to be a success; over-optimistic • *They retired with hopes of living a rosy life in the countryside.*
- 5.62 crude** (adj) /kru:d/  
basic and unrefined (usually in a negative sense); vulgar • *Kate tried to ignore the crude remarks from the group of teenagers on the street.* ➤ crudeness (n), crudely (adv)
- 5.63 raw** (adj) /rɔ:/  
natural and uncontrolled (in a positive or negative sense) • *Tears filled his eyes and he could not conceal his raw emotion.*

- 5.64 gritty** (adj) /'grɪti/  
describing sb who is brave and determined;  
describing a realistic unpleasant situation  
• *Only by gritty determination did Vanessa win the tournament.* > grit (n), grittiness (n)
- 5.65 bleak** (adj) /bli:k/  
hopeless; discouraging • *The prospects looked bleak for the housing market with the economic downturn.* > bleakness (n), bleakly (adv)
- 5.66 harsh** (adj) /hɑ:ʃ/  
severe • *Living on the streets is particularly harsh in winter.* > harshness (n), harshly (adv)
- 5.67 bash** (v) /bæʃ/  
hit sb/sth hard • *He slipped on the ice and bashed his head on the pavement.* > bash (n)
- 5.68 dash sb's hopes** (expr) /dæʃ 'sʌmbədiz hæups/  
destroy sb's hopes • *Louise's hopes of getting the job were dashed when she missed the interview due to the train delay.*
- 5.69 blunt** (v) /blʌnt/  
make sth less sharp; make sth less effective  
• *Her first month at university had blunted her desire to become a lawyer.* > bluntness (n), bluntly (adv)
- 5.70 aptitude** (n) /'æptɪtju:d/  
a natural talent for doing sth • *All applicants for the post had to sit an aptitude test.* > apt (adj), aptly (adv)
- 5.71 backbone** (n) /'bækbəʊn/  
strength of character • *Nigel didn't have the backbone to face the reporters after his defeat.*
- 5.72 initiative** (n) /ɪ'nɪʃətɪv/  
the chance to make a decision quickly and act on sth before sb else does • *Claire took the initiative of designing a new company logo.* > initiate (v), initiation (n)
- 5.73 recognition** (n) /,rekəg'nɪʃn/  
public praise for your actions • *The great artist died in poverty and his masterpieces only received recognition years later.* > recognise (v), recognised (adj), recognisable (adj)
- 5.74 anguish** (n) /'æŋɡwɪʃ/  
extreme suffering or distress • *They suffered the anguish of seeing their home destroyed in the war.* > anguished (adj)
- 5.75 attainment** (n) /ə'teɪnmənt/  
achievement of a goal • *Despite her high level of attainment at school, Agnes preferred farming work to the prospect of university.* > attain (v), attainable (adj)
- 5.76 ineptness** (n) /ɪ'neptnəs/  
lack of ability or skill • *He was fired for his ineptness at handling customer complaints.* > inept (adj), ineptly (adv)  
📎 Syn: ineptitude
- 5.77 irresolution** (n) /ɪ,rezə'lu:ʃn/  
the inability or unwillingness to make a decision • *Your irresolution completely blew your chances of winning the contract; you should have made up your mind sooner.* > irresolute (adj), irresolutely (adv)
- 5.78 lethargy** (n) /'leθədʒi/  
tiredness and/or lack of enthusiasm • *It took Gary a few weeks to shake off the lethargy brought on by his illness.* > lethargic (adj)
- 5.79 caste** (n) /kɑ:st/  
a social class, especially in Hindu society  
• *Only members of the ruling caste are allowed entry to this club.*
- 5.80 stratification** (n) /,strætɪfɪ'keɪʃn/  
the state of being separated into different levels • *Social stratification was clearly taken into account when they appointed the company director.* > stratify (v)
- 5.81 irregularity** (n) /ɪ,regjə'lærəti/  
sth unacceptable by the usual rules; an error  
• *The opposition party claimed there had been irregularities during the ballot counts.* > irregular (adj), irregularly (adv)
- 5.82 toughen up** (phr v) /'tʌfən ʌp/  
become stronger and more resilient • *If you hope to start a business, you'd better toughen up and take some risks.*
- 5.83 leap at** (phr v) /li:p ət/  
accept enthusiastically • *Basil leapt at the chance to go to music school.*
- 5.84 fall in with sb** (phr v) /fɔ:ɪn wɪθ 'sʌmbədi/  
become friends with • *He fell in with bad company and began playing truant with them.*
- 5.85 slip up** (phr v) /slɪp ʌp/  
make a careless mistake • *The robber slipped up by calling his friend by his real name, so the whole gang got caught.* > slip-up (n)
- 5.86 get caught up in sth** (exp) /get kɔ:t ʌp ɪn 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
become unwillingly involved • *I got caught up in heavy traffic this morning.*
- 5.87 intern** (n) /'ɪntɜ:n/  
a student or graduate who has a temporary work experience post in a workplace • *While studying for his master's degree, Andrew worked as an intern at a local newspaper office.* > internship (n)



- 5.88** **let go** (phr v) /let gəʊ/  
fire; dismiss sb • *The company had to let half the staff go when sales figures kept dropping.*

### Phrasal verbs

fall in with sth	slip up
leap at	toughen up
let go	

- 5.89** **pluck up the courage** (expr) /plʌk ʌp ðə 'kʌrɪdʒ/  
manage to feel brave enough to do sth despite the risk involved • *Stephanie finally plucked up the courage to ask for a pay rise.*
- 5.90** **down the drain** (expr) /dəʊn ðə dreɪn/  
wasted • *Don't buy that old car! It would be just money down the drain.*
- 5.91** **throw in the towel** (expr) /θrəʊ ɪn ðə 'taʊəl/  
give up trying • *The course is harder than I expected, but I'm not ready to throw in the towel yet.*
- 5.92** **make a go of sth** (expr) /meɪk ə gəʊ əv 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
do your best to succeed in sth • *Despite some teething problems getting started, she's making a go of writing her first novel.*
- 5.93** **fall short of sth** (expr) /fɔ:l ʃɔ:t əv 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
be below the necessary standard • *The hotel service fell short of our expectations.*
- 5.94** **blow your chance** (expr) /bləʊ ʒɔ:(r) tʃɑ:ns/  
do sth that destroys your hope of success  
• *He blew his chance at the interview by showing reluctance to do overtime.*  
☞ Syn: blow it
- 5.95** **not hold out much hope** (expr) /nɒt həʊld aʊt mʌtʃ həʊp/  
be pessimistic about sth • *They didn't hold out much hope of crossing the Atlantic in their small sailing boat.*
- 5.96** **pick up the pieces** (expr) /pɪk ʌp ðə pi:səz/  
recover or help sb to recover to normal after a setback • *Lindsey avoided criticising her son's choice of partner, but she was around to pick up the pieces after his divorce.*
- 5.97** **be sucked in** (expr) /bi sʌkt ɪn/  
become compelled to get involved in • *I tried not to get sucked into yet another boring discussion about British politics.*
- 5.98** **big yourself up** (expr) /bɪɡ ʒɔ:'self ʌp/  
boast by saying overly positive things about yourself • *Georgia kept bigging herself up to get voted in as class president.*

- 5.99** **proactive** (adj) /prəʊ'æktɪv/  
taking action to make things happen and direct a situation • *Team members are expected to be proactive and work towards joint solutions to develop this project.* > proactively (adv)
- 5.100** **scam** (n) /skæm/  
a devious and illegal way to obtain money from others • *Jill nearly fell for a phone scam when someone called to say she had won a free holiday to the Caribbean.* > scam (v)
- 5.101** **materialise** (v) /mə'tɪəriəlaɪz/  
become a reality; happen as planned • *The college gave a guarantee that we would all instantly find great jobs after the course, but we are still waiting for them to materialise.*  
> materialisation (n), material (adj), materially (adv)
- 5.102** **mercenary** (adj) /'mɜ:sənəri/  
interested in sth for the money • *He's only working for the NGO for mercenary reasons.*  
> mercenary (n)
- 5.103** **in retrospect** (expr) /ɪn 'retrəspekt/  
looking back after the event • *In retrospect, she regretted not having left her birthplace when she was younger.* > retrospection (n), retrospective (adj), retrospectively (adv)
- 5.104** **awe** (n) /ɔ:/  
a feeling of admiration and wonder  
• *They gazed in awe across the magnificent landscape.* > awe (v)
- 5.105** **emulate** (v) /'emjuleɪt/  
try to do sth in the same way as sb else  
• *He hopes to be able to emulate his favourite guitarist's performance one day.* > emulation (n), emulator (n)
- 5.106** **astounded** (adj) /ə'staʊndɪd/  
shocked or surprised at an unlikely achievement • *We were astounded to hear that the dean had been arrested.* > astound (v), astounding (adj), astoundingly (adv)
- 5.107** **at stake** (expr) /ət steɪk/  
likely to fail or succeed depending on an action  
• *The talks went on for hours as the future of the country was at stake.* > stake (v)
- 5.108** **lucrative** (adj) /'lu:krətɪv/  
profit-making • *Despite the lucrative salary offered, Eva felt morally obliged to turn down the job in the unscrupulous company.*  
> lucratively (adv)
- 5.109** **deterrent** (n) /dɪ'terənt/  
sth that prevents or dissuades sb from doing sth • *The image of a cross section of a smoker's lung was used as a deterrent to teenage smoking.* > deter (v), deterrent (adj)



- 5.110 elevate** (v) /'eliveɪt/  
raise sth to a higher position • *His hopes of winning elevated after he won in the quarter finals.* > elevation (n), elevated (adj), elevating (adj)
- 5.111 escalate** (v) /'eskəleɪt/  
quickly worsen • *The wave of violence escalated as the word was spread through social media.* > escalation (n), escalator (n)

## Grammar pages 71-72-73

- 5.112 fugitive** (n) /'fjuːdʒətɪv/  
sb who is running away to avoid capture  
• *With sniffer dogs on his trail, the fugitive escaped by floating down the river on a log.*  
> fugitive (adj)
- 5.113 volatile** (adj) /'vɒlətaɪl/  
having a tendency to change suddenly;  
unstable • *If the housing market weren't so volatile, I'd prefer to sell up immediately.*  
> volatility (n)

## Listening

page 74

- 5.114 bucket list** (n) /'bʌkɪt lɪst/  
a list of things you'd like to do in your lifetime  
• *Long-distance travel features high on most people's bucket lists.*
- 5.115 knock** (v) /nɒk/  
criticise • *Don't knock the idea of self-publishing your book; it worked for some of the best-selling writers.* > knock (n)
- 5.116 have a go at sth** (expr) /həv ə ɡəʊ at 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
try doing sth • *Harry had a go at sky-diving, but he was too scared to do it a second time.*
- 5.117 obligatory** (adj) /ə'blɪɡətəri/  
that must be done because of a rule, etc.; compulsory • *A period of army service is obligatory for young men in many countries.*  
> oblige (v), obligation (n)

## Speaking

page 75

- 5.118 double-edged sword** (expr) /'dʌbl edʒd sɔːd/  
sth that has both benefits and drawbacks  
• *Emigration is a double-edged sword that brings new opportunities but presents the challenges of living in another culture as a foreigner.*

## Expressions

at stake  
be inclined to agree  
be sucked in  
big yourself up  
blow your chance  
catch sb off guard  
cream of the crop  
double-edged sword  
down the drain  
downward spiral  
fall short of sth  
fall through the cracks  
get caught up in sth  
get down to business  
in retrospect  
make a go of sth  
make your way in life  
not hold out much hope  
on the dole  
pick up the pieces  
pluck up courage  
round of applause  
set your sights on sth  
thick and fast  
throw in the towel  
turn over a new leaf  
vicious circle

## Writing

pages 76-77

- 5.119 cream of the crop** (expr) /kriːm əv ðə krɒp/  
the best from a group or large number of things/people • *Naturally, that private school has a high pass rate since they only accept applicants who are already the cream of the crop.*
- 5.120 fast-paced** (adj) /fɑːst peɪsd/  
that happens very quickly • *Amanda sat peacefully on the station platform reading her book, ignoring the fast-paced, smartphone-wielding wannabes sharing her commute.*
- 5.121 aspirational** (adj) /,æspə'reɪʃənəl/  
full of aspirations to improve your situation  
• *Advertisements for the new housing estate were designed with the aspirational new-moneyed middle-class customer in mind.*  
> aspire (v), aspiration (n)
- 5.122 misguidedly** (adv) /,mɪs'gaɪdɪdli/  
wrongly, due to an error of judgement  
• *Bradley misguidedly turned to drugs in search of the excitement that was lacking in his everyday life.* > misguided (adj)

- 5.123 fertile** (adj) /'fɜ:tʌɪl/  
that encourages activity or productivity  
• *The university campus was fertile ground for radical groups.* > fertility (n)  
📌 Opp: infertile
- 5.124 be inclined to agree** (expr) /bi: ɪn'klaɪnd tu: ə'gri:z/  
used to express you have a similar opinion  
• *I'm inclined to agree that we shouldn't risk hiking in this weather.*
- 5.125 forge** (v) /fɔ:dʒ/  
create • *Strong bonds were forged between the participants on the course.* > forge (n)
- 5.126 unscrupulous** (adj) /ʌn'skru:pjələs/  
dishonest and immoral • *Unscrupulous employers have used the job crisis to exploit their workers by lowering wages to the minimum.* > unscrupulousness (n), unscrupulously (adv)  
📌 Opp: scrupulous
- 5.127 harshly** (adv) /'hɑ:ʃli/  
strictly; unkindly • *Matilda felt that her tutor had assessed her essay too harshly because he held conflicting opinions on the topic.*  
> harshness (n), harsh (adj)
- 5.128 small-minded** (adj) /smɔ:ɪl 'maɪndɪd/  
intolerant and stubborn; with a narrow set of rigid views • *Martha relished the anonymity of the city in stark contrast to the small-minded village community she had left.* > small-mindedness (n)

### Attitudes & States: adjectives & adverbs

alluring	lucrative
aspirational	mercenary
astounded	misguidedly
bleak	proactive
crude	prospective
dogged	raw
fast-paced	rosy
fertile	small-minded
gritty	surrogate
harsh	unawares
harshly	unscrupulous
headlong	volatile
intergenerational	wannabe
law-abiding	

## Video 5: Surviving Deadly Everest page 78

- 5.129 crampon** (n) /'kræmpən/  
a metal plate with sharp points, which you attach to the sole of a boot or shoe for climbing on ice or snow • *We were well-equipped for the winter hike with crampons attached to our boots to cross the icy trail.*
- 5.130 catch sb off guard** (expr) /kætʃ 'sʌmbədi ɒf ɡɑ:d/  
take sb by surprise at a weak moment when they are unprepared • *A huge wave caught us off guard and almost capsized our yacht.*
- 5.131 unawares** (adv) /,ʌnə'weəz/  
unexpectedly; without noticing • *Engrossed in their fishing, the anglers drifted unawares out to sea.* > unaware (adj)
- 5.132 oncoming** (adj) /'ɒnklʌmɪŋ/  
approaching • *Blinded by oncoming headlights, he swerved and crashed into the ditch.*
- 5.133 altitude** (n) /'æltɪtju:d/  
the distance above ground level • *The plane suddenly dropped to a low altitude and crashed into the mountainside.*
- 5.134 blizzard** (n) /'blɪzəd/  
a heavy snowstorm with strong winds • *Our car got stuck on the road in a raging blizzard.*
- 5.135 disorientation** (n) /dɪs,ɔ:riən'teɪʃn/  
the confused state of not knowing which direction to take • *Dennis went through a period of disorientation upon his return home following his stay in hospital.* > disorientate (v), disorientated (adj)

# 6 Made of Money

## page 79

- 6.1 embed** (v) /ɪm'bed/  
place sth firmly into sth • *The enemy arrows were embedded on his wooden shield.*  
➤ embeddedness (n)
- 6.2 shrine** (n) /ʃraɪn/  
a place where people visit because it has an important personal or spiritual meaning to them • *A roadside shrine was erected near the site of the fatal accident.* ➤ enshrine (v)

## Reading

## pages 80-81

- 6.3 precept** (n) /'pri:sept/  
a principle or general rule • *She raised her children according to strong moral precepts.*
- 6.4 expenditure** (n) /ɪk'spendɪtʃə(r)/  
the amount of money you spend • *Excessive expenditure on overstuffed public services has led the country into debt.* ➤ expend (v), expendable (adj)
- 6.5 shilling** (n) /'ʃɪlɪŋ/  
a coin worth 1/20 of one pound used in Britain until 1971 • *Gran said she only needed a few shillings a day to do all her shopping in the past.*
- 6.6 miserly** (adj) /'maɪzəli/  
mean; reluctant to spend money that you have • *The miserly business owner refused to upgrade the office equipment.* ➤ miser (n), miserliness (n)
- 6.7 whereby** (adv) /weə'baɪ/  
because of which • *We had to sign a new contract whereby we agreed to work unpaid overtime.*
- 6.8 lustre** (n) /'lʌstə(r)/  
the quality that makes sth appealing • *The palace grounds have lost their lustre with the ravages of time.* ➤ lustrous (adj)
- 6.9 official** (n) /ə'fɪʃl/  
sb in a position of authority in an organisation • *Tax officials are examining the company's accounts.* ➤ official (adj), officially (adv)
- 6.10 parish** (n) /'pærɪʃ/  
a small geographical area that has its own church and/or elected local government • *The Sunday morning church bells were heard throughout the parish.* ➤ parishioner (n)
- 6.11 beadle** (n) /'bi:dl/  
a minor church officer • *The beadle made sure the hymn books were all neatly in place before the congregation arrived for the service.*
- 6.12 workhouse** (n) /'wɜ:khaʊs/  
a place where poor people were sent to live and had to do work • *In Victorian times, those who could not support their families were often sent to the workhouse and forced to earn their keep there.*  
☞ Syn: poorhouse
- 6.13 gloom** (n) /glu:m/  
a feeling of hopelessness and sadness; a lack of light • *An air of gloom and fear hung over the city in the wake of the attacks.* ➤ gloomy (adj), gloomily (adv)
- 6.14 set sth to rights** (expr) /set 'sʌmθɪŋ tu: raɪts/  
correct a situation • *The newly elected government had promised to set the education system to rights.*
- 6.15 establish** (v) /ɪ'stæblɪʃ/  
create sth and make people accept it • *The first high school in Scotland was established in Dunfermline in 1120.*  
➤ establishment (n), established (adj)
- 6.16 periodically** (adv) /ˌpɪəri'ɒdɪkli/  
regularly • *Periodically, the guard walked along the corridors to check up on the prisoners.* ➤ period (n), periodic (adj), periodical (adj)
- 6.17 oatmeal** (n) /'əʊtmɪ:l/  
crushed oats used to make food • *We were offered traditional biscuits made from oatmeal and honey.*
- 6.18 gruel** (n) /'gru:əl/  
a thin porridge; a dish made by boiling oats in water • *Slaves aboard the ship had nothing but a plate of gruel to sustain them daily.*  
➤ gruelling (adj)
- 6.19 copper** (n) /'kɒpə(r)/  
a large copper cooking pot • *The steaming hot soup was served from an old-fashioned copper.* ➤ copper (adj)
- 6.20 apron** (n) /'eɪprən/  
an item of clothing worn over the front of the body to keep clothes clean when you prepare food or do other work • *The baker's long white apron was covered with flour.*
- 6.21 composition** (n) /ˌkɒmpə'zɪʃn/  
a mixture of different things which form sth • *The composition of the village community is mainly senior citizens with a handful of young families.* ➤ compose (v), composite (adj)
- 6.22 porringer** (n) /'pɒ rɪŋə(r)/  
a small portion of food • *Oliver was refused another porringer of food.*

- 6.23 devour** (v) /dɪ'vaʊə(r)/  
eat quickly and hungrily • *After devouring its share of the prey, the lion lay down to watch the cubs eat the remains.*
- 6.24 voracious** (adj) /və'reɪʃəs/  
greedy; eating a lot • *Our long hike had left us with a voracious appetite.* > voracity (n), voraciously (adv)
- 6.25 implicitly** (adv) /ɪm'plɪsɪtli/  
absolutely and without a doubt • *I've known Maria for years and trust her implicitly.* > implicit (adj)
- 6.26 cast lots** (expr) /kɑːst lɒts/  
choose sth/sb by lot (where each person selects sth from a container whoever gets the different one is chosen) • *Do we really need to cast lots to decide who washes the dishes?*
- 6.27 station** (v) /'steɪʃn/  
send sb to stand or wait in a particular place; place yourself in a particular place to wait for or watch sth • *A patrol car was stationed at every junction.* > station (n)
- 6.28 pauper** (n) /'pɔːpə(r)/  
a very poor person • *The artist died a pauper, which is ironic given the current value of his works.*
- 6.29 range** (v) /reɪndʒ/  
arrange in a certain order • *The photographers ranged themselves along the foot of the stage.* > range (n)
- 6.30 grace** (n) /ɡreɪs/  
a short prayer made before eating a meal • *After George said a Thanksgiving grace, we tucked in to the turkey dinner.* > grace (v), gracious (adj), graciously (adv)
- 6.31 commons** (n) /'kɒmənz/  
a school or college dining hall • *Ron sat at a long table with his classmates for breakfast in the school commons.*
- 6.32 compassion** (n) /kəm'pæʃn/  
a feeling of sympathy for and urge to help sb/sth that is suffering • *His eyes filled with compassion when he found the abandoned puppies.* > compassionate (adj), compassionately (adv)
- 6.33 inmate** (n) /'ɪnmeɪt/  
a resident of a prison or other institution which they are not free to leave • *A couple of inmates escaped from the prison by means of a helicopter that suddenly landed in the yard.*
- 6.34 hesitant** (adj) /'hezɪtənt/  
slow to say or do sth because you are unsure or unwilling • *I'm still hesitant about accepting the job offer as it involves relocating.* > hesitate (v), hesitation (n), hesitantly (adv)
- 6.35 capital punishment** (n) /'kæpɪtl 'pʌnɪʃmənt/  
punishment by death • *Capital punishment is still enforced in many states of the USA.*
- 6.36 rid sb/sth of sth/sb** (phr v) /rɪd 'sʌmbədi/ 'sʌmθɪŋ əv 'sʌmbədi/ 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
remove the source of a problem from sb/sth • *Drastic measures are being taken to rid the country of the disease.* > riddance (n)
- 6.37 elder** (n) /'eldə(r)/  
an old and respected member of a tribe or small community • *The village elders met to share air their views I the old square.* > elder (adj), elderly (adj)
- 6.38 conspirator** (n) /kən'spɪrətə(r)/  
sb who is involved in a secret plan to do sth damaging • *The conspirators' best tool to bring down the dictator was media propaganda.* > conspire (v), conspiracy (n), conspiratorial (adj)
- 6.39 exploitative** (adj) /ɪk'splɔɪtətɪv/  
using sb/sth unfairly for your own gain • *Grossly underpaid and overworked, she took her employers to court over their exploitative terms of service.* > exploit (v), exploitation (n)
- 6.40 nudge** (v) /nʌdʒ/  
push your elbow against sb beside you to attract their attention • *Dora nudged me and pointed silently towards the snake emerging from the rocks next to us.* > nudge (n)
- 6.41 reckless** (adj) /'rekləs/  
behaving in careless risk-taking way • *It was hardly surprising when she crashed off the road since she's always been a reckless driver.* > recklessness (n), recklessly (adv)
- 6.42 temerity** (n) /tə'merəti/  
an over-confident outspoken manner that can seem rude • *How dare you have the temerity to speak to me like that!*
- 6.43 pinion** (v) /'pɪnjən/  
restrain sb by tying or holding them so that they cannot move • *The kidnappers had pinioned their victim to the chair.*
- 6.44 countenance** (n) /'kaʊntənəns/  
face or facial expression • *Happiness beamed from each child's countenance as they sang.*
- 6.45 distinctly** (adv) /dɪ'stɪŋktli/  
easily noticeable or recognisable; clearly • *I distinctly remember the day we first met.* > distinction (n), distinct (adj)
- 6.46 confinement** (n) /kən'faɪnmənt/  
the state of being imprisoned or put in a place to limit or restrain your movements • *The prisoner was kept in solitary confinement for six months.* > confine (v)
- 6.47 apprentice** (n) /ə'prentɪs/  
sb who works as a trainee with an experienced worker to learn the skills of a trade • *The plumber arrived with an apprentice carrying his equipment.* > apprentice (v)



## People

apprentice	miser
beadle	official
conspirator	retailer
elder	shareholder
fraudster	street vendor
inmate	tycoon

## Vocabulary pages 82-83-84

- 6.48 compensate** (v) /'kɒmpenseɪt/  
make up for or pay sb back for sth • *He had to work double overtime to compensate for having taken extra leave.* > compensate (v), compensation (n), compensatory (adj)
- 6.49 incur** (v) /ɪn'kʊɪ(r)/  
become liable to pay sth; become subject to sth • *They incurred a massive amount of debt to repay on their credit cards as a result of their reckless spending spree.*
- 6.50 reimburse** (v) /,rɪːɪm'bɜːs/  
pay sb back for sth they have lost or paid out • *The airline reimbursed us for the damage to our suitcases.* > reimbursement (n)
- 6.51 squander** (v) /'skwɒndə(r)/  
spend money carelessly and wastefully • *He squandered all his spare cash on sports cars and motorbikes and now he's broke.* > squanderer (n)
- 6.52 retailer** (n) /'riːteɪlə(r)/  
sb who buys goods from suppliers and sells to consumers • *Many High Street retailers have closed their shops and turned to online selling.* > retail (v), retail (n), retailing (n), retail (adj)
- 6.53 frenzy** (n) /'frenzi/  
a state of fast uncontrolled action • *Supporters cheered in a frenzy of excitement when the winning goal was scored.* > frenzied (adj)
- 6.54 backtrack** (v) /'bæktræk/  
go back on a previous decision or statement • *The moment they came to power, they began to backtrack on their pre-electoral promises.*
- 6.55 inheritance** (n) /ɪn'herɪtəns/  
the property or money you receive as a legal right from a relative after their death • *Mike's aunt left him a small inheritance in her will.* > inherit (v), inheritor (n), inheritable (adj)
- 6.56 elaborate** (adj) /ɪ'læbəreɪt/  
complicated but carefully planned • *It must have taken you hours to prepare such an elaborate meal, but it was delicious.* > elaborate (v), elaboration (n), elaborately (adv)
- 6.57 stock exchange** (n) /stɒk ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/  
the business of buying and selling shares in companies; the building where this activity happens • *There was a flurry of activity on the stock exchange following the announcement of the takeover bid.*
- 6.58 field** (v) /fiːld/  
receive and respond to questions or comments • *I spent half the night fielding comments on my blog.*
- 6.59 shareholder** (n) /'ʃeəhəʊldə(r)/  
sb who owns shares in a business • *Company shareholders began to sell out when rumours of closure were published.*
- 6.60 margin** (n) /'mɑːdʒɪn/  
extra amount of sth included to ensure sth is a success; small amount by which sb wins sth • *The tight schedule left no margin for error.* > marginal (adj), marginally (adv)
- 6.61 merger** (n) /'mɜːdʒə(r)/  
the act of joining two companies together into one • *The possibility of a merger between two of the country's major banks was ruled out.* > merge (v)
- 6.62 tycoon** (n) /taɪ'kuːn/  
sb who is wealthy and powerful due to success in business • *Aristotle Onassis went from humble beginnings to become a wealthy business tycoon.*
- 6.63 concession** (n) /kən'seɪʃn/  
a cost reduction for people of certain categories • *People over 60 are entitled to travel concessions in the UK.* > concede (v), concessionary (adj)
- 6.64 mortgage** (n) /'mɔːɡɪdʒ/  
a repayable amount loaned from a bank or building society to buy property • *Thomas faced the threat of eviction when he couldn't keep up with his mortgage repayments.* > mortgage (v)
- 6.65 abuse** (n) /ə'bjuːs/  
the use or treatment of sth/sb in a harmful or wrong way • *The revolution came about to curb the dictator's abuse of power.* > abuse (v), abusive (adj), abusively (adv)
- 6.66 misuse** (n) /,mɪs'juːs/  
the act of using sth wrongly or dishonestly • *She was fired from the bank after misusing customers' private data for marketing purposes.* > misuse (v)
- 6.67 bribe** (n) /braɪb/  
an amount of money or other gift illegally offered to sb in exchange for help • *The referee was accused of accepting bribes to sway the result of the match.* > bribe (v), bribery (n)

- 6.68 broke** (adj) /brəʊk/ without money; bankrupt • *Could you lend me a few quid till pay day? I'm completely broke.* ☞ Also: flat broke = completely broke
- 6.69 bureaucracy** (n) /bjʊə'rɒkrəsi/ the complex system of regulations and ways of processing information in a government department • *You'd think the government could save money and time by reducing the amount of unnecessary bureaucracy involved.* > bureaucrat (n), bureaucratic (adj), bureaucratically (adv)
- 6.70 miser** (n) /'maɪzə(r)/ sb who hates spending money, even if they are wealthy • *Scrooge must be the world's most famous miser who never gave anything away until he got scared.* > miserly (adj)
- 6.71 posh** (adj) /pɒʃ/ classy and elegant; expensive and high class • *I'm sure she got the job because of her posh accent, but it's a pity she has nothing interesting to say.* > posh (adv)
- 6.72 skint** (adj) /skɪnt/ having no money • *I need a new pair of shoes, but I'm skint so I'll have to make do without them.*
- 6.73 backhander** (n) /'bækhændə(r)/ a bribe; an illegal payment given secretly in return for special treatment • *The surgeon was caught red-handed accepting a backhander from the patient's family.*
- 6.74 tight-fist** (n) /taɪt fɪst/ miser • *David was such a tight-fist that he always managed to get out of paying his share of the restaurant bill.* > tight-fisted (adj)
- 6.75 dosh** (n) /dɒʃ/ money • *Let's stop at the ATM; I need to get some dosh for shopping.*
- 6.76 red tape** (n) /red teɪp/ the bureaucratic process that makes it hard to deal with government departments • *Replacing his stolen driving licence involved an incredible amount of red tape.*
- 6.77 moneyed** (adj) /'mʌnɪd/ rich • *The well-laid lawns of the moneyed villas were a far cry from the backstreets of the city centre.*
- 6.78 extravagant** (adj) /ɪk'strævəɡənt/ spending more than is necessary or than is affordable • *It seemed extravagant spending so much on a pair of shoes, but at least they were ethically made and so comfortable.* > extravagance (n), extravagantly (adv)
- 6.79 thrifty** (adj) /'θrɪftɪ/ cautious about spending money; not spending more than necessary • *You ought to be a little more thrifty with your pay packet and keep some cash for a rainy day.* > thrift (n)
- 6.80 lavish** (adj) /'lævɪʃ/ luxurious; generous • *Despite their humble home, they always bestow the most lavish hospitality on their guests.* > lavish (v)
- 6.81 opulent** (adj) /'ɒpjələnt/ wealthy; luxurious • *The room was decorated with opulent velvet furnishings.* > opulence (n), opulently (adv)
- 6.82 well-heeled** (adj) /wel hi:lɪd/ wealthy • *Tim has managed to invest wisely and remain quite well-heeled, so he has a good life.*
- 6.83 well-to-do** (adj) /wel tə du:/ wealthy • *Shirley comes from a well-to-do family and attended the most expensive private schools.*
- 6.84 aboveboard** (adj) /ə'bɒv bɔ:d/ honest • *The plumber's estimate was high, but it was completely aboveboard for the extent of repairs required.*
- 6.85 crooked** (adj) /'krʊkɪd/ dishonest • *A special task force was established to weed out crooked public officials.* > crook (n)
- 6.86 shady** (adj) /'ʃeɪdɪ/ suspicious-looking and dishonest • *I'd never buy a car from that shady dealer.*
- 6.87 stingy** (adj) /'stɪndʒɪ/ mean; miserly • *Contrary to popular belief, the Scots are probably far less stingy than their southern neighbours.* > stinginess (n)
- 6.88 spendthrift** (adj) /'spendθrɪft/ spending more than necessary • *Their spendthrift gestures gradually put them out of business when they ran out of cash.* > spendthrift (n)
- 6.89 penny-pinching** (adj) /'penɪ 'pɪntʃɪŋ/ mean; miserly • *There's a fine line between careful and penny-pinching. What's the point in having money if you can't enjoy it?* > penny-pinching (n)
- 6.90 bankruptcy** (adj) /'bæŋkrʌptsi/ the state of not having enough money to pay your debts • *Not only have many small firms closed lately, but some large companies have filed for bankruptcy too.* > bankrupt (v), bankrupt (adj)
- 6.91 crack down** (phr v) /kræk daʊn/ make a more serious effort to stop an illegal activity • *Police are cracking down on identity theft.* > crackdown (n)
- 6.92 dole sth out** (phr v) /dəʊl 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt/ hand out a share of sth, e.g. money, clothes, etc. • *She dropped in at the refugee centre to dole out donations of winter clothing.* > dole (n)

- 6.93 rip sb/sth off** (phr v) /rɪp'sʌmbədi/'sʌmθɪŋ  
ɒf/  
cheat sb/sth • *He realised he'd been ripped off when the so-called nearly-new car broke down on its first run.* > rip-off (n)
- 6.94 shower sb with sth** (phr v) /'ʃaʊə(r)  
'sʌmbədi wɪθ 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
give sb generous amounts of sth • *The organisation was showered with donations following the TV appeal.*
- 6.95 tip off** (phr v) /tɪp ɒf/  
warn sb about sth likely to happen • *Police were tipped off that the suspect might be heading for the airport.* > tip-off (n)

### Adjectives

#### Rich

elaborate  
posh  
moneyed  
well-heeled  
well-to-do  
minted  
flush

#### Generous

extravagant  
lavish  
opulent  
spendthrift

#### Poor

broke  
indigent  
skint  
wretched

#### Mean

exploitative  
miserly  
penny-pinching  
ruthless  
stingy  
thrifty  
voracious

### Phrasal verbs

come into sth	rid sb/sth of sth/sb
crack down	rip off sb/sth
dole out sth	shower sb with sth
fritter sth away	tip off

- 6.96 fraudster** (n) /'frɔ:dstə(r)/  
sb who pretends to be sb/sth they are not to cheat others out of money • *The gang of fraudsters operated an insurance scam to cheat people out of their savings.* > fraud (n), fraudulent (adj), fraudulently (adv)
- 6.97 come into sth** (phr v) /kʌm 'ɪntə 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
inherit • *Penny came into a fortune when her grandmother passed away.*
- 6.98 be in a tight corner** (expr) /bi: ɪn ə taɪt  
'kɔ:nə(r)/  
be in a difficult situation that is hard to get out of • *Unemployed, and having a large mortgage to pay off Rita was in a tight corner and could see no way out.*
- 6.99 nest egg** (n) /nest eg/  
an amount of money saved up over a period of time • *They saved a little bit every month to add to that nest egg which would make retirement more comfortable.*

- 6.100 as a last resort** (expr) /əz ə lɑ:st rɪ'zɔ:t/  
when all other options have been tried  
• *As a last resort, she moved back to her grandparents farm in the countryside.*
- 6.101 in the fast lane** (expr) /ɪn ðə fɑ:st leɪn/  
where everything seems exciting and full of action • *As I prefer a quiet life, it's not so much life in the fast lane as life in the bus lane for me!*
- 6.102 on the side** (expr) /ɒn ðə saɪd/  
as well as your main job • *Stanley works in a bank, but he also designs websites on the side.*
- 6.103 a safe bet** (n) /bet/  
sth that is likely to happen • *It's a safe bet that the bank will agree to renegotiate your loan repayment to make things a bit easier.*  
> bet (v), betting (n)
- 6.104 in the red** (expr) /ɪn ðə red/  
owing more to the bank than you have paid them • *His account was already £2,000 in the red, so the bank refused to lend him any more.*
- 6.105 bottom line** (n) /'bɒtəm laɪn/  
the main point to be considered • *The bottom line is that we've reached the end of our savings.*
- 6.106 minted** (adj) /'mɪntɪd/  
very rich • *Look at that car! She must be absolutely minted.* > mint (v), mint (n), mint (adj)
- 6.107 flush** (adj) /flʌʃ/  
having some money to spare, usually only for a short time • *Having just received her holiday bonus, Angela was feeling quite flush and splashed out on a new hairdo.*
- 6.108 strapped for cash** (expr) /stræpt fə(r) kʌʃ/  
short of money • *Theo will be too strapped for cash to go out much until he pays off his car loan.*
- 6.109 rolling in it** (expr) /'rəʊlɪŋ ɪn ɪt/  
having a lot of money • *Everyone thinks we're rolling in it because we built our own house, but it took years of effort and we put everything into it.*
- 6.110 indigent** (adj) /'ɪndɪdʒənt/  
very poor • *Who'd have believed that the former millionaire would ever end up indigent and homeless?*
- 6.111 born with a silver spoon in your mouth** (expr) /bɔ:n wɪθ ə sɪlvə(r) spu:n ɪn jɔ:(r)  
maʊθ/  
coming from a rich family • *Being born with a silver spoon in her mouth, she had certainly had a privileged childhood.*
- 6.112 grit** (n) /grɪt/  
determination • *Through sheer grit and personal sacrifice, you should be able to get the business off the ground.* > gritty (adj)



- 6.113 frame of mind** (expr) /freɪm əv maɪnd/  
a mood • *I'm not in the right frame of mind to sit through a theatre play, so count me out for tonight.*
- 6.114 wretched** (adj) /'retʃɪd/  
extremely bad; awful • *We were shocked to learn just how wretched the conditions are in clothing factories of some supposedly high-end brands.* > wretch (n), wretchedly (adv)
- 6.115 on the wrong side of the tracks** (expr) /ɒn ðə rɒŋ saɪd əv ðə trækz/  
in a poor neighbourhood • *Hamish may have been born on the wrong side of the tracks, but he succeeded in breaking out of the cycle of deprivation that pervaded the district.*
- 6.116 impetus** (n) /'ɪmpɪtəs/  
a motivating factor; stimulus • *Federer's loss in the first round gave him the impetus to give it his all in the final.*

### Expressions

as a last resort  
be in a tight corner  
born with a silver spoon in your mouth  
cast lots  
finders keepers (losers weepers)  
frame of mind  
go the extra mile  
in the fast lane  
in the red  
on the side  
on the wrong side of the tracks  
rolling in it  
set sth to rights  
strapped for cash  
the haves and have-nots

## Listening

page 88

- 6.120 bitcoin** (n) /'bɪtkɔɪn/  
a unit of electronic money used for an online trading system • *Just imagine if we all start trading with bitcoins and there would be no need for currency exchange.*
- 6.121 hyperinflation** (n) /,haɪpəɪn'fleɪʃn/  
a situation of rapidly rising prices which is damaging to a country's economy  
• *Hyperinflation during the nineties and early noughties contributed to the world recession.*
- 6.122 digital currency** (n) /'dɪdʒɪtl 'kʌrənsi/  
internet-based currency • *One day digital currency may replace banknotes and coins.*
- 6.123 time bank** (n) /taɪm bænk/  
an exchange of work measured in hours or by the hour • *Time banks are a logical concept for people who are able to exchange similar services.*
- 6.124 legal tender** (n) /'li:gl 'tendə(r)/  
currency that is valid and legally accepted  
• *The old drachma ceased to be legal tender in Greece after the euro was adopted.*
- 6.125 street vendor** (n) /stri:t 'vendə(r)/  
sb who sells goods or food directly on the street • *Street vendors were lined up outside the station selling everything from bags and clothes to cheap toys.*

### Verbs

backtrack	embed	range
command	establish	reimburse
compensate	field	salvage
devour	incur	squander
disclose	pinion	station

## Grammar

pages 85-86-87

- 6.117 tenant** (n) /'tenənt/  
sb who pays rent to live in a place  
• *Prospective tenants were expected to pay two months' rent in advance before receiving the keys.* > tenant (v), tenancy (n)
- 6.118 fritter sth away** (phr v) /'frɪtə(r) 'sʌmθɪŋ ə'weɪ/  
gradually spend money or time carelessly  
• *She had frittered away her inheritance within a year.*
- 6.119 disclose** (v) /dɪs'kləʊz/  
reveal private or secret information • *The doctor was fired when it was disclosed that he had never actually passed a medical degree.*  
> disclosure (n)

## Speaking

page 89

- 6.126 finders keepers (losers weepers)** (expr) /'faɪndəz 'ki:pəz ('lu:zəz 'wi:pəz)/  
a saying that means sb who finds a lost object has the right to keep it • *If nobody claims the purse you handed in, you'll get it back. So it's a case of finders keepers.*

## Writing

pages 90-91

- 6.127 the haves and have-nots** (n) /ðə hævs ənd hæv nɒts/  
the wealthy and the poor • *Divisions between the haves and have nots appear to be deepening as more people fall into poverty.*



- 6.128 looting** (n) /'lu:tɪŋ/  
the crime of stealing things from shops during or after an emergency, e.g. fire • *During the riots, gangs went on a looting spree in the High Street shops.* > loot (v), loot (n), looter (n)
- 6.129 societal** (adj) /sə'saɪətəl/  
of a society and its organisation • *With the Industrial Revolution came societal reforms in Britain as more people moved to live in cities.* > society (n)
- 6.130 windfall** (n) /'wɪndfɔ:l/  
an amount of money that sb gets unexpectedly through a win or a gift • *We received a sudden windfall when our lottery ticket got lucky.*
- 6.131 ruthless** (adj) /'ru:θləs/  
cruel and heartlessly determined • *He's a ruthless gangster who will stop at nothing to control the streets.* > ruthlessness (n), ruthlessly (adv)
- 6.132 command** (v) /kə'mɑ:nd/  
get sth e.g. rewards because you deserve them • *As a much sought-after speaker, she can command high fees for each public appearance.* > command (n)

## Video 6: Alaskan Money Laundering

page 92

- 6.133 money laundering** (n) /'mʌni 'lɔ:ndərɪŋ/  
transfer money made illegally into banks abroad or a business to make it look legal • *The company owner was arrested on a charge of money laundering when it was clear he was living beyond his means.*
- 6.134 dollar bill** (n) /'dɒlə(r) bɪl/  
a US dollar banknote • *The film was a moral tale about a man who found a million dollar bill in the street.*
- 6.135 charred** (adj) /tʃɑ:d/  
blackened as a result of a fire • *The charred remains of the pine forest extended along the hillside.* > char (v)
- 6.136 distinguishable** (adj) /dɪ'stɪŋgwɪəbəl/  
recognisable • *On the inscription on the base of the statue, the name of the ancient sculptor was still distinguishable.* > distinguish (v), distinguished (adj)  
🗒 Opp: indistinguishable

- 6.137 intact** (adj) /ɪn'tækt/  
complete and undamaged • *You were so lucky the £100 note that was in your shirt pocket remained intact throughout the washing machine cycle!*
- 6.138 salvage** (v) /'sælvdʒ/  
save items from a (car/ship/train) wreck or damaged building • *Thousands of pounds worth of jewellery was salvaged from the safety deposit boxes found on the sunken liner.* > salvage (n)
- 6.139 stack** (n) /stæk/  
a pile • *From the stacks of papers awaiting attention on her desk, I realised it was a bad time to ask Nancy to do me a favour.* > stack (v)
- 6.140 trooper** (n) /'tru:pə(r)/  
a state police officer in the USA • *When they broke down on the highway, a state trooper in a patrol car stopped to offer assistance.* > troop (v), troop (n)
- 6.141 denomination** (n) /dɪ,nɒmɪ'neɪʃn/  
a unit of monetary value • *Sharon had a vast collection of coins of different denominations from her international travels.* > denominate (v), denominator (n), denominational (adj)
- 6.142 go the extra mile** (expr) /gəʊ ðə 'etrə maɪl/  
do more than is expected • *While the company's package tours are relatively pricey, they do go that extra mile to offer that holiday-of-a-lifetime experience.*
- 6.143 bereaved** (adj) /bɪ'ri:vɪd/  
having lost a loved one who has recently died • *She went to pay her condolences to her recently bereaved neighbour whose grandfather had passed away.* > bereave (v), bereavement (n)

### Money: nouns

backhander	merger
bankruptcy	miser
bitcoin	money laundering
bribe	mortgage
denomination	nest egg
dollar bill	shilling
dosh	stack
expenditure	stock exchange
inheritance	tight-fist
legal tender	time bank
looting	windfall
margin	

## page 95

- 7.1 **glow-worm** (n) /gləʊ wɜ:m/ a kind of insect, the female of which produces a green light at the end of its tail • *At night, we could see the flickering lights of glow-worms in the bushes outside our tent.*
- 7.2 **shimmer** (v) /'ʃɪmə(r)/ shine brightly, esp on the surface of sth moving • *Moonlight shimmered on the ripples of the lake.* > shimmer (n)

## Reading

## pages 96-97

- 7.3 **detox** (v) /'di:tɒks/ detoxify; cleanse your body of harmful substances by following a certain diet and routine • *After the excesses of Christmas parties, Neil felt he had to detox from meats and sweets to get back in shape.* > detoxify (v), detox (n), detoxification (n)
- 7.4 **prosperity** (n) /prɒ'sperəti/ success and wealth • *The country's prosperity depends on the tourism sector.* > prosper (v), prosperous (adj), prosperously (adv)  
📖 Syn: affluence
- 7.5 **detrimental** (adj) /,detrɪ'mentl/ damaging • *Plans for the construction of a hotel complex on the beach were opposed on the grounds that it would be detrimental to the environment.* > detriment (n), detrimentally (adv)
- 7.6 **take the plunge** (expr) /teɪk ðə plʌndʒ/ decide to do sth risky despite being nervous about it • *They finally took the plunge and signed up for the Himalayan trek.*
- 7.7 **off the beaten track** (expr) /ɒf ðə 'bi:tən træk/ in an isolated spot • *I stopped for the night at a backpackers hostel off the beaten track in the Scottish Highlands.*
- 7.8 **answer for** (phr v) /'ɑ:nsə(r) fə(r)/ admit responsibility for sth; make up for doing sth • *When the tiny island of Spinalonga became overrun with tourists, the locals felt the TV series filmed there had a lot to answer for.*
- 7.9 **simplistic** (adj) /sɪm'plɪstɪk/ making sth appear simpler than it is • *The government's plan to tax hotels even further is far too simplistic and will reduce revenues in the long term.* > simplify (v), simplification (n), simplistically (adv)
- 7.10 **hear sth on the grapevine** (expr) /hɪər 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn ðə 'ɡreɪpvəɪn/ hear a piece of news from informal sources, through gossip • *I heard on the grapevine that the area is to become a designated nature reserve, but I'm not sure if it's true.*
- 7.11 **pristine** (adj) /'prɪsti:n/ very clean and well maintained • *The white steps leading to the village church were kept in pristine condition.*
- 7.12 **seething** (adj) /'si:ðɪŋ/ moving energetically in a large number • *The watermelon skin left on the beach was covered by a seething swarm of wasps.* > seethe (v)
- 7.13 **begrudge** (v) /bɪ'ɡrʌdʒ/ resent that sb has sth which you feel they don't deserve • *You shouldn't begrudge him taking a long holiday since he's been working so hard for years.* > begrudgingly (adv)
- 7.14 **trappings** (n) /'træpɪŋz/ physical signs or decoration usually associated with sth • *The resort has all the trappings of a traditional British seafront town with its promenade and colourful beach huts.*
- 7.15 **sensibilities** (n) /,sensə'bɪlətɪz/ sensitive feelings • *Detracting from the historic significance of the site, the tacky souvenir shops offended the sensibilities of the more discerning visitors.* > sensible (adj), sensibly (adv)
- 7.16 **trickle down** (phr v) /'trɪkl daʊn/ move very slowly from the top to the lower levels • *Little of the income generated from high-end cruise ships has trickled down to the local economy.* > trickle (n)
- 7.17 **make a dent in sth** (expr) /maɪk ə dent ɪn 'sʌmθɪŋ/ make a difference by reducing the amount of sth • *The mild winter made a dent in the takings at the ski resort as there was no snow on the slopes for weeks.*
- 7.18 **haggle** (v) /'hæɡl/ try to reach an agreement over a price • *After haggling over the extortionate taxi fare, the driver finally accepted the reasonable amount we offered.*
- 7.19 **novelty** (adj) /'nɒvlti/ unusual or out of the ordinary • *As the passengers disembarked, street sellers laden with novelty items awaited at the port.* > novelty (n), novel (adj)

- 7.20 measly** (adj) /'mi:zli/  
disapprovingly small or insignificant • *The minimum wage was reduced to a measly three euros per hour.*
- 7.21 add insult to injury** (expr) /æd 'ɪnsʌlt tə 'ɪndʒəri/  
make a bad situation worse • *Our train was delayed by six hours, and to add insult to injury, the station cafe had closed, so there were no refreshments available.*
- 7.22 put one over on sb** (expr) /pʊt wʌn 'əʊvə(r) ɒn 'sʌmbədi/  
fool (sb); deceive • *I'm sure the taxi driver put one over on us by taking us by the longest route to the museum.*
- 7.23 voluntourism** (n) /ˌvɒləntʊərɪz(ə)m/  
a type of tourism that allows travellers to do voluntary work in countries they want to visit • *Voluntourism has attracted foreign visitors to assist with wildlife projects, such as the sea turtle rescue project in Greece.*  
➤ voluntourist (n)
- 7.24 goodwill** (n) /ˌɡʊd'wɪl/  
helpful intentions towards others • *In a spirit of goodwill, Sue offered the homeless man a bottle of water and a sandwich.*
- 7.25 exacerbate** (v) /ɪg'zæsəbeɪt/  
worsen a bad situation • *That cream will only exacerbate your sunburn; try some yoghurt instead.* ➤ exacerbation (n)
- 7.26 secluded** (adj) /sɪ'klu:ɪdɪd/  
in a place far away or sheltered from other people • *What had formerly been a secluded beach on our previous visits had been transformed into an exclusive spa complex.*  
➤ seclude (v), seclusion (n)
- 7.27 spew** (v) /spju:z/  
emit in large amounts • *Black smoke spewed out from the huge funnel of the ship.*
- 7.28 cargo** (n) /'kɑ:gəʊ/  
things transported in a ship or plane • *The precious cargo of antiquities was recovered from the shipwreck.*
- 7.29 soapbox** (n) /'səʊpbɒks/  
a box or platform you stand on to declare your views in public • *Vicky's on her soapbox again about immigration.*
- 7.30 imperialistic** (adj) /ɪmˌpɪəriə'ɪlɪstɪk/  
supporting the attitude that one country is inferior to another ruling power • *The Inuit are still up against the imperialistic notion that they all live in igloos.* ➤ imperialism (n), imperialist (n)
- 7.31 discrepancy** (n) /dɪs'krepənsi/  
a difference between things that should be the same • *The passenger was detained by police when the check-in staff noticed a discrepancy on his passport.*

- 7.32 lax** (adj) /læks/  
not strict • *We hastily exited the smoke-filled restaurant, appalled at the lax attitude to the anti-smoking laws.*
- 7.33 ivory** (n) /'aɪvəri/  
the hard whitish substance that forms the tusks of elephants and some other animals • *Melinda refused to touch her grandma's old piano, disgusted that the keys were made of real ivory.*
- 7.34 turn a blind eye to** (expr) /tɜ:n ə blaɪnd aɪ tu:z/  
pretend you don't notice sth • *Unwilling to turn a blind eye to animal abuse, Irene posted a video of the cruel donkey driver on her blog which went viral.*
- 7.35 crackpot** (adj) /'krækpɒt/  
unusual or crazy • *Brian's latest crackpot idea is to go swimming with whales.* ➤ crackpot (n)
- 7.36 commendable** (adj) /kə'mendəbl/  
worthy of praise • *The hotel facilities and service were highly commendable; our stay was worth every penny.* ➤ commend (v), commendation (n), commendably (adv)
- 7.37 implicit** (adj) /ɪm'plɪsɪt/  
indirectly suggested • *Her ongoing support was implicit from the tone of her voice.*  
➤ imply (v), implication (n), implicitly (adv)
- 7.38 blare** (v) /bleər/  
make a very loud noise • *Music blared from the nearby nightclub till the small hours of the morning.* ➤ blare (n)
- 7.39 souk** (n) /su:k/  
a traditional Arab market • *We purchased an assortment of spices and a colourful rug at the souk.*

### Places

brink	province
enclave	souk
foothill	

## Vocabulary pages 98-99-100

- 7.40 oddity** (n) /'ɒdəti/  
sth/sb that appears strange • *If the Tower of Pisa is ever returned to a vertical position, it could cease to become the oddity that attracts millions of visitors.* ➤ odd (adj), oddly (adv)
- 7.41 rarity** (n) /'rɛərəti/  
sth that's rare • *Asian restaurants were once a rarity in Greece, but now they are becoming more commonplace.* ➤ rare (adj), rarely (adv)



- 7.42 deciding** (adj) /dɪ'saɪ,dɪŋ/  
that affects a result more than other things  
• *The weather forecast will be the deciding factor in their choice of destination for their winter break.* > decide (v), decision (n), decisive (adj), decidedly (adv), decisively (adv)
- 7.43 desired** (adj) /dɪ'zɑɪəd/  
wanted • *The tour operator's advertising campaign had the desired effect and bookings began to pour in.* > desire (v), desire (n), desirability (n), desirable (adj), desirous (adj), desirably (adv)
- 7.44 dim** (adj) /dɪm/  
vague; unclear • *Brad had a dim recollection of visiting the Parthenon twenty years earlier.* > dim (v), dimly (adv)
- 7.45 educated guess** (n) /'edʒukeɪtɪd ges/  
a guess likely to be correct based on existing knowledge • *Making an educated guess, I'd say the kittens are about two months old.*
- 7.46 narrow escape** (n) /'nærəʊ ɪ'skeɪp/  
a situation where you only just avoid danger  
• *We had a very narrow escape when the plane almost crash landed on the trees close to the runway.*
- 7.47 prime** (adj) /praɪm/  
major; typical • *The temple was a prime example of sixth-century Greek architecture.* > prime (v), prime (n)
- 7.48 enclave** (n) /'enkleɪv/  
a small area of a city or country where the community has a unique culture • *Women are not allowed to visit the monastic enclave on the rocky peninsula.*
- 7.49 unsettling** (adv) /ʌn'setlɪŋ/  
worrying • *Seeing how the island's economy had deteriorated so drastically was an unsettling experience.* > unsettle (v)
- 7.50 influx** (n) /'ɪnflʌks/  
the arrival of people or goods, etc. in large numbers • *Apart from the weekly influx of cruise passengers on their day trip, business has been very quiet on the island this year.*
- 7.51 injection** (n) /ɪn'dʒekʃn/  
a large amount of money put in to support a business, etc. • *Despite the injection of grants to develop tourism, small businesses have become unviable due to tax measures.* > inject (v)
- 7.52 short-sighted** (adj) /ʃɔ:t 'saɪtɪd/  
not considering the possible consequences of sth • *It was a very short-sighted decision to turn up in the city without making a prior hotel booking.* > short-sightedness (n)
- 7.53 cautionary** (adj) /'kɔ:ʃənəri/  
giving a warning • *His travel blog gave a cautionary tale explaining the hazards of travelling alone in the area.* > caution (v), caution (n), cautious (adj), cautiously (adv)

- 7.54 unbridled** (adj) /ʌn'braɪld/  
uncontrolled and excessive • *The children's eyes shone with unbridled enthusiasm at the prospect of visiting Disneyland.*
- 7.55 buzz** (n) /bʌz/  
a strong and enjoyable feeling of excitement  
• *Motorcycle racing gives Richard a real buzz.* > buzz (v)
- 7.56 out of this world** (expr) /aʊt əv ðɪs wɜ:ld/  
amazing; impressive • *The view from our terrace at sunset was out of this world.*
- 7.57 out of the ordinary** (expr) /aʊt əv ðə 'ɔ:dnri/  
strange or different • *The concept of an underwater hotel is somewhat out of the ordinary.*
- 7.58 drive (sb/sth) out** (phr v) /draɪv 'sʌmbədi/ 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt/  
compel sb/sth to leave a place • *The last remaining villagers were driven out in the 1960s when the area was designated an archaeological site.*
- 7.59 wipe out** (phr v) /waɪp aʊt/  
destroy completely • *The emperor ordered the destruction of the temples to wipe out traces of the ancient polytheist religion.*
- 7.60 dawn on** (phr v) /dɔ:n ɒn/  
finally begin to understand • *It suddenly dawned on us that we had missed the last bus to our hotel, so we hitched a lift from a kindly fellow tourist.*
- 7.61 itinerary** (n) /aɪ'tɪnərəri/  
a plan and schedule for a journey • *The five-day itinerary includes a tour of UNESCO sites.*
- 7.62 stumble upon** (phr v) /'stʌmbəl ʌpən/  
find by chance • *They happened to stumble upon the ruins of an ancient sanctuary when hiking in the wild cross country.*  
Also: stumble across

### Phrasal verbs

answer for	drive (sb/sth) out
cling on to	stumble upon
come in for	trickle down
dawn on	wipe out

- 7.63 tranquillity** (n) /træŋ'kwɪləti/  
the state of undisturbed quiet and peacefulness • *The tranquillity of the pine forest was shattered by a blast of loud music blaring from a parked camper van.* > tranquillise (v), tranquilliser (n), tranquil (adj)
- 7.64 sparsely** (adv) /'spɑ:sli/  
with only small numbers or amounts of sth in a large area • *The holiday apartment was sparsely furnished, offering only the basic facilities.* > sparseness (n), sparse (adj)



- 7.65 vaccine** (n) /'væksi:n/  
a chemical put into the body to protect from disease • *Unfortunately, there is no vaccine to protect against mosquito-borne diseases such as dengue, which is prevalent in Asia and South America.* > vaccinate (v), vaccination (n)
- 7.66 phenomenal** (adj) /fə'nɒmɪnəl/  
very large or impressive • *A phenomenal range of souvenirs and other local goods were on sale in the souk.* > phenomenon (n), phenomenally (adv)
- 7.67 devastate** (v) /'devəsteɪt/  
destroy completely • *The tsunami had devastated the island within minutes.* > devastation (n), devastating (adj), devastatingly (adv)
- 7.68 wreak** (v) /ri:k/  
cause sth bad to happen • *Wildfires invariably wreak destruction across the country in the dry season.*
- 7.69 province** (n) /'prɒvɪns/  
an area of a country not including the capital city • *Life can appear idyllic in the provinces so long as adequate facilities, such as medical care, are close at hand.* > provincial (adj), provincially (adv)
- 7.70 wham** (excl) /wæm/  
used to denote a loud sound or sudden event • *A lightning bolt struck the tower – wham! – right in front of us.*
- 7.71 whim** (n) /wɪm/  
a spontaneous desire to do sth that may not be necessary or practical • *They set off to explore the underwater caves on a whim.* > whimsical (adj), whimsically (adv)
- 7.72 play it by ear** (expr) /pleɪ ɪt baɪ ɪə(r)/  
decide what to do as a situation develops without a forward plan • *The ski slopes may not be open, but let's just head for Parnassos and play it by ear when we arrive.*
- 7.73 the tip of the iceberg** (expr) /ðə tɪp əv ðə 'aɪsbɜ:g/  
the smallest visible part of a larger problem • *The online review represents only the tip of the iceberg as only a handful of people bothered to complain about the service.*
- 7.74 a drop in the ocean** (expr) /ə drɒp ɪn ðə 'əʊʃn/  
an insignificant amount, not large enough to change a situation • *Though the food packages were welcome, they were just a drop in the ocean compared to the number of starving homeless.*
- 7.75 on the spur of the moment** (expr) /ɒn ðə spɜ: əv ðə 'mæʊmənt/  
without forward planning • *On a cold winter's night in Aberdeen, we decided on the spur of the moment to book a holiday in New Zealand.*

- 7.76 a riot of (sth)** (expr) /ə 'raɪət əv 'slɪmθɪŋ/  
a mass of different types of the same thing • *The trees were a riot of orange hues in late autumn.*
- 7.77 a stone's throw** (expr) /ə stəʊnz θrəʊ/  
a short distance away • *Their bungalow was just a stone's throw from a secluded beach.*

### Expressions

a drop in the ocean  
a riot of (sth)  
a stone's throw  
add insult to injury  
make a dent in sth  
off the beaten track  
on the spur of the moment  
out of the ordinary  
out of this world  
play it by ear  
put one over on sb  
take the plunge  
the tip of the iceberg  
turn a blind eye to

- 7.78 microclimate** (n) /'maɪkrəʊklaɪmət/  
a small geographic area whose climate differs from the surrounding area • *Casablanca has its own microclimate which tends to be cooler than the rest of Morocco.*
- 7.79 microcopy** (n) /'maɪkrə'kɒpi/  
the short-form text used in apps and transactions • *Microcopy shows up in online error boxes explaining what users should do.*
- 7.80 microcosm** (n) /'maɪkrəʊkɒzəm/  
sth that includes all the elements of sth much larger • *The island was a microcosm of the whole country.* > microcosmic (adj), microcosmically (adv)
- 7.81 peculiar (to)** (adj) /pɪ'kju:liə/  
belonging to • *This particular species of fish is peculiar to the lake at Prespes.*
- 7.82 embark** (v) /ɪm'bɑ:k/  
get on a ship; start out doing sth • *We said our final goodbyes and left our friends to embark on the ferry.* > embarkation (n)  
👉 Opp: disembark
- 7.83 embody** (v) /ɪm'bɒdi/  
represent the concept of sth • *The Olympic Games embody the spirit of international peace and cooperation.* > embodiment (n)
- 7.84 come in for** (phr v) /kʌm ɪn fə(r)/  
be subject to • *The local authority has come in for a lot of criticism about the state of the beaches.*
- 7.85 cling on to** (phr v) /klɪŋ ɒn tu:/  
be unwilling to give sth up • *Sadie clung on to the dream that one day she would be able to travel to every continent.*

- 7.86 brag** (v) /bræg/  
show off; boast arrogantly • *He bragged to his gang about stealing the car.* > brag (n)
- 7.87 gloat** (v) /gləʊt/  
express pleasure at sth you succeeded in at sb else's expense • *It's time the new government stopped gloating over their victory and started putting their pre-election promises into action.* > gloating (adj)
- 7.88 swagger** (v) /'swægə(r)/  
walk in an exaggerated, overtly proud way • *The victor swaggered off the court, waving to his fans and brandishing his trophy.* > swagger (n)
- 7.89 concurrently** (adv) /kən'kʌrəntli/  
at the same time as sth else • *The photography and art courses run concurrently, so you can't attend both in the same term.* > concur (v), concurrence (n), concurrent (adj)
- 7.90 recurrently** (adv) /rɪ'kʌ:rəntli/  
repeatedly • *She had the same dream recurrently for several nights in a row.* > recur (v), recurrence (n), recurrent (adj), recurring (adj)
- 7.91 concurringly** (adv) /kən'kʌrɪŋli/  
with the same opinion as sth else • *The department heads agreed concurringly to close the office for two weeks during the holiday season.* > concur (v), concurrence (n), concurring (adj)
- 7.92 cursively** (adv) /'kʌ:sɪvli/  
in a manner with the letters joined together • *It is a rarity to read script written cursively in our digital age.* > cursive (adj)
- 7.93 explicitly** (adv) /ɪk'splɪsɪtli/  
openly and directly • *Reception staff are explicitly instructed to be courteous to guests.* > explicitness (n), explicit (adj)
- 7.94 extravagantly** (adv) /ɪk'strævəɡəntli/  
in an excessive way • *The building was extravagantly decorated with gold-trimmed wall paintings.* > extravagance (n), extravagant (adj)

### Nouns: states

microclimate	resilience
microcosm	sensibilities
oddity	tranquillity
paradox	trappings
prosperity	whim
rarity	

## Grammar pages 101-102-103

- 7.95 somewhat** (adv) /'sʌmwʌt/  
rather • *I always feel somewhat relieved when my suitcase appears in the baggage reclaim area.*
- 7.96 utterly** (adv) /'ʌtəli/  
absolutely • *Sean was utterly exhausted after the long-haul flight.* > utter (adj)
- 7.97 virtually** (adv) /'vɜ:tʃuəli/  
almost • *There were virtually no hotels operating in the low season in the area.* > virtual (adj)
- 7.98 resilience** (n) /rɪ'zɪliəns/  
the strength and ability to withstand difficult situations • *Their climbing equipment showed great resilience, having stood the tests of time.* > resilient (adj)
- 7.99 predator** (n) /'predətə(r)/  
an animal that hunts and eats other animals • *Some species of fish have a sting to protect them from predators.* > predatory (adj)
- 7.100 foothill** (n) /'fʊθɪl/  
a small hill on the lower slopes of a mountain • *The village lies in the foothills of the Alps.*
- 7.101 brink** (n) /brɪŋk/  
a situation where sth exciting or dangerous is very close to happening • *I believe the company is on the brink of bankruptcy.*
- 7.102 poaching** (n) /'pəʊtʃɪŋ/  
illegal hunting • *Poaching, which all too often goes unpunished, is one of the major hazards endangering elephants.* > poach (v), poacher (n)
- 7.103 sedate** (v) /sɪ'deɪt/  
use a drug to cause sth/sb to become calm or sleep • *The dog was so agitated that it had to be sedated before the vet could examine it.* > sedation (n), sedative (n), sedate (adj), sedative (adj), sedately (adv)
- 7.104 inhumane** (adj) /,ɪnhju:'meɪn/  
extremely cruel and uncaring • *Stealing the blanket from the homeless man was an unforgivable inhumane act.* > inhumanity (n), inhumanely (adv)  
📌 Opp: humane
- 7.105 quack** (n) /kwæk/  
sb who makes false claims to have medical skills or knowledge; slang term for doctor • *Don't believe everything that quack tells you; get a second opinion from a more reputable doctor.*

## Adverbs

abundantly	extravagantly
concurrently	somewhat
cursively	utterly
explicitly	virtually

## Listening

page 104

- 7.106 fracking** (n) /'frækiŋ/  
the process of using liquid at high pressure to force open natural cracks in the earth to extract oil or gas • *Conservationists are concerned that fracking will cause irreversible damage to the environment.*
- 7.107 upcycling** (n) /'ʌpsaɪklɪŋ/  
the process of treating used objects/materials to create sth more valuable than the original object • *The imposing statues were constructed by upcycling empty aluminium cans.* > upcycle (v), upcycled (adj)
- 7.108 understatement** (n) /'ʌndəsteɪtmənt/  
a statement that makes sth sound less serious or important than it is • *Light rain? That is an understatement; there's thunderstorm on the way.* > understate (v)
- 7.109 foregone conclusion** (n) /'fɔːgən kən'kluːʒn/  
a result that is certain to happen • *It's a foregone conclusion that marine species will continue to die out if sea pollution is not stopped.*

## Nouns: actions

buzz	influx
discrepancy	injection
educated guess	itinerary
entanglement	narrow escape
foregone conclusion	poaching
fracking	understatement
goodwill	upcycling
grapevine	voluntourism

## Speaking

page 105

- 7.110 vibrant** (adj) /'vaɪbrənt/  
energetic and lively; bright • *The carnival floats were decorated with colours as vibrant as the festive atmosphere.* > vibrantly (adv)

## Writing

pages 106-107

- 7.111 indigenous** (adj) /ɪn'dɪdʒənəs/  
native to an area • *He played a musical instrument similar to the didgeridoo that is peculiar to the indigenous people of Australia.*
- 7.112 deplete** (v) /dɪ'pli:t/  
cause the supply of sth to reduce • *Earth's natural resources are fast being depleted.* > depletion (n)
- 7.113 foster** (v) /'fɒstə(r)/  
encourage the development of sth • *The conference aimed to foster greater cooperation between nations on the issue of sea pollution.*
- 7.114 complement** (v) /'kɒmplɪment/  
add sth extra to improve sth else • *They were served several side dishes to complement the main course.* > complement (n), complementary (adj)
- 7.115 abundantly** (adv) /ə'bʌndəntli/  
to a great extent; extremely • *It was abundantly clear that the turtle had been injured by a ship's propeller.* > abound (v), abundance (n), abundant (adj)
- 7.116 paradox** (n) /'pærədɒks/  
sth that has strangely contrasting features • *Robin Williams was a sad paradox – the funny man who suffered from depression.* > paradoxical (adj), paradoxically (adv)
- 7.117 sprawling** (adj) /'sprɔːlɪŋ/  
spreading over a wide area • *The sprawling concrete mass of the city stretches in all directions around the Acropolis hill.* > sprawl (v), sprawl (n)
- 7.118 overrun** (v) /,əʊvə'rʌn/  
crowd out a place in large numbers • *The beaches are overrun with local and foreign visitors in the summer months.*
- 7.119 albeit** (conj) /,ɔːl'biːɪt/  
although it was • *It was a fulfilling, albeit tiring, hike around the mountain.*
- 7.120 by the same token** (conj) /baɪ ðə seɪm 'təʊkən/  
for the same reason; by the same logic • *There was no guarantee the hotel would make a profit, but by the same token, the season had not been a complete disaster.*
- 7.121 inasmuch as** (conj) /,ɪnəz'mætʃ əz/  
used to add a justification for sth already mentioned • *They were utterly worn out, inasmuch as they'd just completed a 25 km walk.*

**7.122** **notwithstanding** (conj) /ˌnɒtwɪθ'stændɪŋ/  
despite sth • *Notwithstanding Paul's knowledge of Spanish, he hadn't a clue what the villagers were trying to tell him.* ➤  
notwithstanding (adv)

### Conjunctions

albeit	inasmuch as
by the same token	notwithstanding

## Video 7: Reef Cleaner

page 108

**7.123** **entanglement** (n) /ɪn'tæŋɡlmənt/  
the state of being caught or trapped in sth  
• *Loggerhead turtles are prone to injury through entanglement in fishing nets.*  
➤ entangle (v)  
📎 Opp: disentanglement

**7.124** **barge** (n) /bɑːdʒ/  
a long, flat-bottomed boat • *Colourful gondolas and barges were lined up along the side of the canal.*

**7.125** **utilise** (v) /'juːtəlaɪz/  
make use of • *The hikers utilised a piece of wood to support their injured companion's broken leg until they reached the refuge.*  
➤ utilisation (n)

**7.126** **brutalise** (v) /'bruːtəlaɪz/  
treat sb/sth in a violent way • *The slaves were brutalised and kept in appalling conditions.*  
➤ brutality (n), brutal (adj), brutally (adv)

**7.127** **snag** (v) /snæg/  
get sth caught and torn on a sharp object  
• *I couldn't avoid snagging my trousers on the thorny bushes which we had to walk through.*  
➤ snag (n)

**7.128** **shears** (n) /ʃiəz/  
a garden tool like large heavy scissors  
• *Mildred was snipping away at her garden hedge with a pair of stainless steel shears.*  
➤ shear (v)

**7.129** **biodegradable** (adj) /ˌbaɪəʊdɪ'greɪdəbl/  
that can be naturally decomposed • *It's ironic that many supposedly environmentally friendly vegetables are sold wrapped in plastic which is not biodegradable.* ➤ biodegrade (v)  
📎 Opp: non-biodegradable



# 8

# Knowledge is Power

## page 109

- 8.1 **slate** (n) /sleɪt/  
a small sheet of dark grey stone that was used to write on in schools in the past • *What a long way school notebooks have come in a century – from slates to tablets!* > slate (v)

## Reading

## pages 110-111

- 8.2 **Mickey Mouse** (adj) /'mɪkiː maʊs/  
fake; of poor quality • *Tom took some surprising good photos, considering he only has a cheap Mickey Mouse camera.*
- 8.3 **snob** (n) /snɒb/  
sb who acts as if they are better than others because they know more or have different tastes • *Carol is too much of a snob to join her friends at the backstreet café; she prefers a more high class venue.* > snobbery (n), snobbish (adj), snobbishly (adv)
- 8.4 **land a job** (expr) /lænd ə dʒɒb/  
obtain a job • *How did he manage to land a prime job at the embassy?*
- 8.5 **hands-on** (adj) /hændz ɒn/  
being practically involved in doing sth • *The final year of the course involves work placements for students to gain hands-on experience.*
- 8.6 **sick (and tired) of sth/sb** (expr) /sɪk (ənd 'taɪəd) əv 'sʌmθɪŋ/ 'sʌmbədi/  
fed up with sth/sb • *I'm sick and tired of being bombarded with marketing phone calls.*
- 8.7 **subject sb to sth** (phr v) /səb'dʒekt 'sʌmbədi tə'sʌmθɪŋ/  
make sb endure sth unpleasant • *Maria was subjected to ridicule by her classmates when she expressed her wish to study at Oxfordbridge University.* > subject (n), subject (adj)
- 8.8 **undertaking** (n) /ˌʌndə'teɪkɪŋ/  
an important task • *The new university is a joint undertaking between the old technical college and a private investor.* > undertake (v)
- 8.9 **critical thinking** (n) /'krɪtɪkl 'θɪŋkɪŋ/  
the process of considering information carefully to judge it objectively • *Students are encouraged to develop the skill of critical thinking to process information analytically.*
- 8.10 **vocational** (adj) /vəʊ'keɪʃənəl/  
relating to the skills and knowledge required for a particular job • *In order to become an electrician, Ken attended a one-year vocational training course.* > vocation (n)

- 8.11 **state of affairs** (expr) /stɪət əv ə'feəz/  
a situation • *The government can no longer turn a blind eye to the shocking state of affairs in the public education system.*
- 8.12 **snobbery** (n) /'snɒbəri/  
the attitude of people who act as though they are superior to others • *Although he was offered a place at Cambridge, Terry opted for a local university to avoid the risk of facing class snobbery.* > snob (n), snobbish (adj), snobbishly (adv)
- 8.13 **pale in comparison** (expr) /peɪl ɪn kəm'pærɪsn/  
seem less significant • *This light shower pales in comparison to the hurricanes coming in across the Atlantic.*
- 8.14 **bastion** (n) /'bæstɪən/  
an institute or group that holds onto a certain way of life that it represents • *Ancient Athens was one of the first bastions of democracy.*
- 8.15 **superiority** (n) /suː'prɪəri'ɒrəti/  
the state of being better or in a stronger position than others • *Although she had only just passed her degree with a minimum of study, the fact that it was from St Andrews University gave her an air of superiority.* > superior (n), superior (adj)
- 8.16 **hail from** (phr v) /heɪl frɒm/  
originally come from or have been born in • *Marios hails from Crete, but he's been living in Patra for years.*
- 8.17 **hallowed** (adj) /'hæləʊd/  
respected • *Open-air theatrical performances are one of Greece's hallowed traditions.*
- 8.18 **red-brick university** (n) /red brɪk juːnɪ'vɜːsəti/  
a university built in the late 19th to early 20th century as opposed to older established ones (e.g. Oxford, Cambridge) • *The original red-brick universities specialised in science and engineering, but have now branched out into other fields of study.*
- 8.19 **in sync with** (expr) /ɪn sɪŋk wɪθ/  
in line with; in agreement with • *Coming from a totally different cultural background, Ivan's ideas were not quite in sync with those of his British colleagues.*
- 8.20 **classics** (n) /'klæsɪks/  
the study of ancient Greek and Latin language and literature • *Anyone who has studied classics will be familiar with the works of Homer.* > classical (adj), classic (adj)

- 8.21 take offence** (expr) /teɪk ɪ ə'fens/  
feel insulted or hurt by a remark • *Most people would take offence at being called an upper-class twit, but Graham took it as a joke.*
- 8.22 mockingly** (adv) /'mɒkɪŋli/  
in a way that ridicules sb/sth • *Tina mockingly referred to her teacher's accent as 'Grenghish'.*  
➤ mock (v), mocking (n), mocking (adj)
- 8.23 rigorous** (adj) /'rɪɡərəs/  
that has to be done according to strict rules/standards • *The exam was supervised with rigorous security standards.* ➤ rigour (n), rigorously (adv)
- 8.24 placement** (n) /'pleɪsmənt/  
a temporary period spent gaining practical experience in a workplace • *To complete her social work qualification, Helen had to spend parts of her course on placement in both state and voluntary organisations.* ➤ place (v)
- 8.25 have the last laugh** (expr) /həv ðə læst lɑːf/  
be more successful than others expected; prove others to be wrong • *Anthony had the last laugh when his better qualified friends, who were unemployed, came to him for their car repairs.*
- 8.26 tuition** (n) /tjuːʃn/  
teaching fees • *University education is definitely not accessible for everyone as tuition fees are on the increase.*
- 8.27 applied** (adj) /ə'plaɪd/  
that can be used practically rather than only in theory • *William is studying applied linguistics at Cambridge with a view to becoming a teacher.* ➤ apply (v)
- 8.28 a means to an end** (expr) /ə miːnz tə ɒn end/  
sth of little importance in itself which will lead to sth better • *Liz regarded English language teaching as a means to an end as it served as an internationally marketable skill.*
- 8.29 cry out for** (expr) /kraɪ aʊt fɜː(r)/  
demand; require very much • *The country is crying out for workers with practical skills and creative talent rather than more philosophers and lawyers.*
- 8.30 joblessness** (n) /'dʒɒbləsnes/  
the number of people out of work; unemployment • *The rate of joblessness has grown to around 50% among young people, which is a tragic state of affairs.*  
➤ jobless (adj)
- 8.31 practicality** (n) /,præktɪ'kæləti/  
the quality of being suitable and of realistic or practical use • *Becoming a design engineer involves combining practicality with imagination.* ➤ practical (adj), practically (adv)

## Vocabulary pages 112-113-114

- 8.32 acknowledgement** (n) /ək'nɒlɪdʒmənt/  
acceptance that sth is right • *Harry received a bonus from his employer as an acknowledgement of his contribution to the company's success.* ➤ acknowledge (v)
- 8.33 appendix** (n) /ə'pendɪks/  
an additional section giving supplementary information at the end of a book, etc.  
• *You can check out the rules in the grammar appendix of your student's book.*  
➤ append (v),  
📎 Plural: appendices
- 8.34 bibliography** (n) /,bɪbli'ɒɡrəfi/  
a list of books, articles, etc. that you have referred to in a piece of writing • *Don't forget to include your bibliography quoting your sources at the end of your thesis.*  
➤ bibliographer (n), bibliographical (adj)
- 8.35 criteria** (n) /kraɪ'tɪəriə/  
the standards by which sth is assessed or categorised • *Do you think exams are the best criteria to assess a student's progress?*  
📎 Singular: criterion
- 8.36 fundamental** (adj) /,fʌndə'mentl/  
basic; most important • *Thorough research providing statistics is fundamental to back up your report.* ➤ fundamentally (adv)
- 8.37 hypothesis** (n) /haɪ'pɒθəsɪs/  
an idea that you believe to be correct based on a guess or assumption • *Her argument is pure hypothesis, so she needs to expand with a few hard facts to make it hold water.*  
➤ hypothesise (v), hypothetical (adj), hypothetically (adv)  
📎 Plural: hypotheses
- 8.38 indicator** (n) /'ɪndɪkeɪtə(r)/  
a sign that shows how sth is now or likely to be • *Exam results are not always an accurate indicator of a person's ability.* ➤ indicate (v), indication (n), indicative (adj)
- 8.39 plagiarism** (n) /'pleɪdʒərɪz(ə)m/  
the act of copying sb's ideas, especially in written works • *A simple internet search confirmed the editor's suspicions of several instances of plagiarism within the book.*  
➤ plagiarise (v), plagiarist (n)
- 8.40 dissertation** (n) /,dɪsə'teɪʃn/  
a piece of academic writing on a certain subject • *Pauline had to sacrifice her social life to produce her 5,000-word dissertation for her course assessment.*
- 8.41 adhere to** (v) /əd'hɪə tuː/  
follow a set of rules, etc. • *You'd better adhere to the school rules or you may be expelled.*  
➤ adherence (n), adherent (adj)

- 8.42 dean** (n) /di:n/  
sb in charge of a university department • *The graduates filed onto the stage one by one to receive their degrees from the dean.*
- 8.43 faculty** (n) /'fæklti/  
a department of study in a university; all the teachers in a university department  
• *Professor Higgins became dean of the Faculty of Science in 2010.*
- 8.44 formidable** (adj) /'fɔ:mɪdəbl/  
impressively powerful or worthy of respect  
• *Renia's CV with her formidable list of work experience highly impressed the interview panel.* > *formidably* (adv)
- 8.45 intellect** (n) /'ɪntələkt/  
the ability to reason and understand advanced concepts • *Marie Curie was considered a woman of outstanding intellect.* > *intellectual* (adj), *intellectually* (adv)
- 8.46 rationalise** (v) /'ræʃnəlaɪz/  
find a logical reason why sth/sb does sth  
• *Bob's parents tried to rationalise why their older son had turned into the school bully in his first year at primary school.*  
> *rationalisation* (n), *rational* (adj), *rationally* (adv)
- 8.47 append** (v) /ə'pend/  
add sth on to the end of a written work  
• *A list of photo credits were appended at the back of the book.* > *appendix* (n)
- 8.48 supplementary** (adj) /ˌsʌplɪ'mentri/  
given in addition to sth else • *For extra practice, supplementary exercises were added to the online version of the course.*  
> *supplement* (v), *supplement* (n)
- 8.49 posit** (v) /'pɒzɪt/  
put forward a hypothesis as a basis for argument • *Whoever posited the unscientific theory of mass poisoning through the use of chemtrails has a lot to answer for.*  
> *position* (n)
- 8.50 surmise** (v) /sə'maɪz/  
deduce • *We surmised that the tutor had given us the wrong test paper since the questions were far too easy.* > *surmise* (n)
- 8.51 inexplicable** (adj) /ˌɪnɪk'splɪkəbl/  
unable to be explained • *For some inexplicable reason, Frances dropped out of the course when she was doing very well.*  
> *inexplicably* (adv)  
📖 Opp: *explicable*
- 8.52 intelligible** (adj) /ɪn'telɪdʒəbl/  
that can be understood • *The phone line was so faint that her voice was barely intelligible.*  
> *intelligibly* (adv)  
📖 Opp: *unintelligible*

- 8.53 apply yourself** (v) /ə'plai ʃɔ:'self/  
work very hard to achieve sth • *If you want to get better grades, you'll have to start applying yourself to your studies till the final exams are over.*
- 8.54 assign** (v) /ə'saɪn/  
give sb a particular task to do or role to carry out • *The invigilator was assigned the task of collecting the papers at the end of the exam.*  
> *assignment* (n)
- 8.55 apparatus** (n) /ˌæpə'reɪtəs/  
a set of equipment for a specific task  
• *Oxygen tanks and other diving apparatus lined the walls of the water sports centre.*
- 8.56 paraphernalia** (n) /ˌpærəfə'neɪliə/  
a collection of objects used for an activity  
• *Ian carries a bag of spare tubes, spanners and other paraphernalia whenever he goes long-distance cycling.*
- 8.57 rationale** (n) /ˌræʃə'naɪl/  
the main reason behind a particular idea  
• *I don't understand the rationale behind the revised school curriculum.* > *rationalise* (v), *rational* (adj), *rationally* (adv)
- 8.58 scope** (n) /skəʊp/  
a range of things that sth/sb deals with; opportunity to do sth • *There is little scope for expansion in our specialised line of business.*
- 8.59 sphere** (n) /sfɪə(r)/  
an area of interest or focus • *More women are coming to the forefront in the sphere of international politics.* > *spherical* (adj)

### Education: nouns

acknowledgement	joblessness
apparatus	mentorship
appendix	placement
bastion	plagiarism
bibliography	practicality
classics	rapport
compilation	rationale
crammer	red-brick university
criteria	referral
critical thinking	scope
dean	slate
dissertation	sphere
faculty	superiority
hypothesis	tuition
indicator	tutor
intellect	

- 8.60 omen** (n) /'əʊmən/  
a sign that sth might happen • *The prime minister lives in hope of finding a positive omen for the country's economic future.*



- 8.61 drift off** (phr v) /drɪft ɒf/  
fall asleep • *Arthur had stayed up all night studying and was so tired he almost drifted off during the exam.*
- 8.62 keep at sth** (phr v) /ki:p æt 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
continue doing sth without stopping • *If you keep at it, you'll finish your dissertation in no time.*
- 8.63 mount up** (phr v) /maʊnt ʌp/  
increase over time • *Their debts kept mounting up until they admitted they could no longer afford private school fees.*
- 8.64 take sth in** (phr v) /teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ɪn/  
comprehend sth completely • *The news came as such a shock that it took me a few minutes to take it all in.*
- 8.65 on the face of it** (expr) /ɒn ðə feɪs əv ɪt/  
based on a first impression • *On the face of it, she seems like the best person for the job, but only time will tell.*
- 8.66 in a nutshell** (expr) /ɪn zə 'nʌtʃəl/  
in a few words; succinctly • *In a nutshell, there are not so many job opportunities for forensic scientists in our town.*
- 8.67 on the threshold** (expr) /ɒn ðə 'θreʃhəʊld/  
about to enter a new situation • *On the threshold of a major political decision, John suddenly resigned from his post and walked out.*
- 8.68 know the ropes** (expr) /nəʊ ðə rəʊps/  
be familiar with or experienced in how to do sth • *Having been in the retail business for years, he certainly knows the ropes.*
- 8.69 be on the same page** (expr) /bi: ʌn ðə seɪm peɪdʒ/  
be in agreement about what to do • *Most adolescents believe that their parents are never on the same page as them.*
- 8.70 drop the subject** (expr) /drɒp ðə 'sʌbdʒɪkt/  
stop a discussion on a particular issue  
• *I confess I deserved to fail the exam as I didn't study for it, so let's just drop the subject.*
- 8.71 saved by the bell** (expr) /seɪvd baɪ ðə bel/  
relieved of doing sth you don't want to do because of an interruption • *My maths teacher just rang to cancel today's lesson. Saved by the bell!*
- 8.72 learn the hard way** (expr) /lɜ:n ðə hɑ:d weɪ/  
find out how to do sth through your own experience or mistakes • *Maggie had no support from her parents when she left home; they made her learn the hard way.*
- 8.73 hit the books** (expr) /hɪt ðə bʊks/  
study hard • *Summer's over guys! It's time to hit the books again to get through this course with flying colours.*
- 8.74 read between the lines** (expr) /ri:d bɪ'twi:n ðə laɪnz/  
look for an implicit meaning in sth • *Reading between the lines, I think he wants to leave his job.*
- 8.75 by the book** (expr) /baɪ ðə bʊk/  
according to the rules • *We were surprised at Mandy's use of plagiarism as she had always done everything by the book.*
- 8.76 cite** (v) /saɪt/  
make reference to sth as an example • *Can you cite any examples to support your theory?*  
➤ citation (n)
- 8.77 referral** (n) /rɪ'fɜ:rəl/  
the act of sending sb to a person or place they need to go to, e.g. for help • *The head teacher recommended the child's referral to a speech therapist.* ➤ refer (v), referee (n), reference (n)
- 8.78 compilation** (n) /,kɒmpɪ'leɪʃn/  
a collection of things, e.g. music or written works • *His first book was a compilation of short stories.* ➤ compile (v)
- 8.79 curricular** (adj) /kə'ɪkjələ(r)/  
connected with a school curriculum • *The village school's core curricular subjects were reading, writing and maths.* ➤ curriculum (n)  
📎 Opp: extra-curricular
- 8.80 exemplify** (v) /ɪg'zemplɪfaɪ/  
be a clear example of sth • *The statues exemplified the style of the famous sculptor, Praxiteles.* ➤ example (n), exemplary (adj)
- 8.81 assimilate** (v) /ə'sɪməleɪt/  
allow sb to become an integral part of a place, group, etc. • *Since the 1990s, a whole generation of Balkan immigrants have become assimilated into Greek society.*  
➤ assimilation (n)

### Expressions with verbs

be on the same page  
cry out for  
drop the subject  
have the last laugh  
hit the books  
know the ropes  
land a job  
learn the hard way  
pale in comparison  
read between the lines  
take offence



# Grammar pages 115-116-117

- 8.82 vehemently** (adv) /'vi:əməntli/  
very strongly; forcefully • *Karl is vehemently opposed to private education, maintaining that everyone should have an equal chance in life.* > vehement (adj)
- 8.83 absent-minded** (adj) /,æbsənt 'maɪndɪd/  
forgetful • *Professor Jackson pretends to be absent-minded by forgetting the end of a formula just to make sure his students know the answer.* > absent-mindedness (n), absent-mindedly (adv)
- 8.84 crammer** (n) /'kræmə(r)/  
a short course to help students prepare quickly for exams • *George had to spend his two-month summer break on a crammer to prepare for his final year exams at high school.* > cram (v)
- 8.85 tailor-made** (adj) /'teɪlə eɪd/  
designed specifically to suits sb's needs • *They offer tailor-made courses with a flexible schedule and content to suit individual requirements.*
- 8.86 disciplined** (adj) /'dɪsəplɪnd/  
trained to behave according to the rules • *Catherine was impressed that her first group of Chinese students were so disciplined in comparison with their Mediterranean counterparts.* > discipline (v), disciplinary (adj)  
📖 Opp: undisciplined
- 8.87 offspring** (n) /'ɒfsprɪŋ/  
a person's child; the young of an animal • *While the majority of parents want the best for their offspring, it's not that easy to work out what 'the best' is.*
- 8.88 fend for yourself** (phr v) /fend fɜ: ʃɔ:'self/  
look after yourself • *The children were left to fend for themselves for an hour or so after school before their parents got back from work.*

## Phrasal verbs

drift off	mount up
fend for yourself	subject sb to sth
hail from	take sth in
keep at sth	

# Listening page 118

- 8.89 enhance** (v) /ɪn'hɑ:ns/  
improve the quality, appearance, value, etc. of sth/sb • *Mum's taking an Open University course in computing to enhance her job prospects.* > enhancement (n)

- 8.90 accelerate** (v) /ək'seləreɪt/  
make sth happen or go faster • *The learning process is accelerated when learners are personally motivated.* > acceleration (n)
- 8.91 facilitate** (v) /fə'sɪlɪteɪt/  
make sth happen more easily • *Smaller class groups will facilitate student participation.* > facilitation (n)
- 8.92 reinforce** (v) /,rɪɪn'fɔ:s/  
make sth stronger • *The influx of immigrants has reinforced the stress on the country's education budget.* > reinforcement (n)
- 8.93 hinder** (v) /'hɪndə(r)/  
make it difficult for sth/sb to progress • *Bullying might be a contributing factor which hinders a child's progress at school.* > hindrance (n)

## Education: verbs

accelerate	facilitate
adhere to	fulfil
append	hinder
apply yourself	posit
assign	rationalise
assimilate	reinforce
cite	renovate
enhance	stray
exemplify	surmise

# Speaking page 119

- 8.94 renovate** (v) /'renəveɪt/  
repair or redecorate sth to improve its appearance and condition • *Barbara bought an old farm cottage and had it renovated.* > renovation (n)
- 8.95 soundproof** (v) /'saʊndpru:f/  
condition sth so that sound cannot get into or out of it • *Ria and Al have soundproofed the walls of their spare room by covering them with empty cardboard egg boxes!* > soundproof (adj)
- 8.96 extracurricular** (adj) /,ekstrəkə'rɪkjələr/  
outside the usual school curriculum • *Mary's kids take part in so many extracurricular activities that they have no time left for free play.*

## Expressions

a means to an end	on the threshold
by the book	saved by the bell
in a nutshell	sick (and tired) of
in its entirety	sth/sb
in sync with	state of affairs
on the face of it	

# Writing

pages 120-121

- 8.97 novel** (adj) /'nɒvl/  
new and imaginative • *The theatre group had devised a novel approach to encourage audience participation.* > novelty (n)
- 8.98 in its entirety** (expr) /ɪn ɪts ɪn'taɪərətɪ/  
as a whole • *In its entirety, the play lasted for three hours with only a short interval.* > entire (adj), entirely (adv)
- 8.99 parallel** (n) /'pærəlel/  
a similar feature or situation, etc. • *Although the variables have changed, it is still possible to draw parallels between the conflicts between nations in the past with those of the present.* > parallel (v), parallel (adj)
- 8.100 accessible** (adj) /ək'sesəbl/  
easily understood • *His books are both accessible and enjoyable to people of all ages.* > access (v), access (n)
- 8.101 tutor** (n) /'tju:tə(r)/  
a teacher, especially one who teaches individuals or small groups • *Adrian supplements his teaching salary by working as a private tutor in evening classes.* > tutor (v), tuition (n)
- 8.102 steer sth/sb** (v) /stiə(r) 'sʌmθɪŋ/ 'sʌmbədi/  
guide sb/sth • *Ellen always manages to steer the topic of discussion towards animal abuse whenever we eat out together.*
- 8.103 stray** (v) /streɪ/  
wander off the topic and start talking about sth else • *His essay was fairly well-written, but for the fact that he had strayed off topic in the final paragraph.* > stray (n), stray (adj), astray (adv)
- 8.104 competent** (adj) /'kɒmpɪtənt/  
capable of doing sth to the required standard • *I'd recommend Thelma as a competent accountant with an aptitude for problem solving.* > competence (n), competently (adv)  
📌 Opp: incompetent
- 8.105 rapport** (n) /ræ'pɔ:(r)/  
a friendly, understanding relationship • *She developed an instant rapport with her students through making them feel their opinions were valued.*

- 8.106 harmonious** (adj) /hɑ:'məʊniəs/  
peaceful and friendly • *Relations between the two countries have never been harmonious, so the possibility of war could become a reality.*  
> harmonise (v), harmony (n), harmoniously (adv)

## Adjectives

absent-minded	hands-on
accessible	harmonious
applied	inexplicable
competent	intelligible
curricular	Mickey Mouse
disciplined	novel
extracurricular	rigorous
formidable	supplementary
fundamental	tailor-made
hallowed	vocational

## Video 8: Environmental Theme Park

page 122

- 8.107 mentorship** (n) /'mentəʃɪp/  
a helping process where sb experienced assists sb with less experience of sth  
• *The school's mentorship programme worked well in its experimental stages.* > mentor (v), mentor (n)
- 8.108 remedy** (v) /'remədi/  
give a solution to a problem • *To remedy the problems facing unemployed teenagers, the centre runs a drop-in counselling service as well as support groups.* > remedy (n), remedial (adj)
- 8.109 fulfil** (v) /fʊl'fɪl/  
satisfy • *In an overcrowded classroom setting with students of mixed ability, teachers feel frustrated that they are unable to fulfil their own potential.* > fulfilment (n), fulfilling (adj)

# 9 Flying the Nest

## Reading

pages 126-127

- 9.1 milestone** (n) /'maɪlstəʊn/  
a significant event in your life • *Emigrating to New Zealand was a significant milestone in Athena's life.*
- 9.2 disproportionately** (adv) /,dɪsprə'pɔːʃənətli/  
in a way that is unevenly divided • *Magda spends a disproportionately large amount of time on her work.* > disproportion (n), disproportionate (adj)
- 9.3 manifestation** (n) /,mænɪfe'steɪʃn/  
a fact or action that shows something is true or exists • *The demonstration was a clear manifestation of support for the opposition party.* > manifest (v), manifest (n), manifest (adj), manifest (adv)
- 9.4 perpetuate** (v) /pə'petʃueɪt/  
cause a situation to continue • *Their dependency on private education simply perpetuates the cycle of class inequality.* > perpetuation (n), perpetual (adj), perpetually (adv)
- 9.5 discrimination** (n) /dɪ'skrɪmɪ'neɪʃn/  
the act of treating people differently on basis of their gender, race, age, etc. • *Returning to work at 40, Jane faced age discrimination at every turn; being told she was too old for most jobs.* > discriminate (v), discriminating (adj), discriminatory (adj)
- 9.6 mortality** (n) /mɔː'tæləti/  
the number of deaths during a period of time • *Infant mortality is disproportionately high in poor countries.* > mortal (n), mortal (adj), mortally (adv)  
📖 Opp: immortality
- 9.7 legitimate** (adj) /lɪ'dʒɪtɪmət/  
accepted by law; justifiable • *Their decision to dismiss Nick was perfectly legitimate as he had been colluding with a rival firm.* > legitimise (v), legitimacy (v), legitimately (adv)  
📖 Opp: illegitimate
- 9.8 maturity** (n) /mə'tʃʊərəti/  
the state of being completely developed • *Amal was forced into an arranged marriage before she had reached maturity.* > mature (v), mature (adj), maturely (adv)  
📖 Opp: immaturity
- 9.9 deference** (n) /'defərəns/  
polite respect • *The books were censored in deference to the culture of the country.* > defer (v), deferential (adj), deferentially (adv)
- 9.10 legislative** (adj) /'ledʒɪslətɪv/  
related to law-making procedures • *Legislative changes regarding sex discrimination were introduced in the UK in 1975.* > legislate (v), legislation (n), legislator (n)
- 9.11 enforcement** (n) /ɪn'fɔːsmənt/  
the act of putting a law into practice so it is obeyed • *Despite the Greek no-smoking law, its enforcement is lax or non-existent in most areas.* > enforce (v), enforceable (adj)
- 9.12 burden** (n) /'bɜːdn/  
a heavy or stressful responsibility • *In Mediterranean societies, the burden of elderly care usually falls on the family.* > burden (v)
- 9.13 revere** (v) /rɪ'vɪə(r)/  
respect and admire to a great extent • *Revered as a great peacemaker, a day of mourning was declared on his death.* > reverence (n), reverent (adj), reverently (adv)
- 9.14 ranks** (n) /ræŋks/  
the status of frontline soldiers rather than army officers; the ordinary members of a group rather than the leaders • *Out of business and out of luck, she was forced to join the ranks of the unemployed.* > rank (v), rank (n)
- 9.15 sacred** (adj) /'seɪkrɪd/  
of religious importance; very important and highly respected • *Several animals, such as cows and monkeys, are regarded as sacred in Hindu culture and are not to be harmed.* > sacredness (n)
- 9.16 excruciating** (adj) /ɪk'skruːʃɪeɪɪŋ/  
extremely painful • *The prisoners were subject to the most excruciating forms of torture.* > excruciatingly (adv)
- 9.17 initiation** (n) /ɪ,nɪʃi'eɪʃn/  
an act of making sb part of a group; an act of introducing sb to an activity • *His first book was a flop, but served as a lesson in his initiation as an author.* > initiate (v), initiative (n), initiator (n)

- 9.18 venomous** (adj) /'venəməs/  
poisonous • *The painful sting of the venomous jellyfish took me weeks to get over.*  
> venom (n)
- 9.19 hallucination** (n) /həˌluːsɪ'neɪʃn/  
an illusion that sb imagines, usually due to the effect of an illness or drug • *The painkillers were so strong that Greg was suffering hallucinations.* > hallucinate (v), hallucinatory (adj)
- 9.20 come to** (phr v) /kʌm tuː/  
recover consciousness • *When the sailor came to, he realised he was shipwrecked on an island.*
- 9.21 agitated** (adj) /'ædʒɪteɪtɪd/  
behaving nervously or anxiously • *He began to get agitated as he awaited the test results.*  
> agitate (v), agitation (n), agitating (adj), agitatingly (adv)
- 9.22 raring** (adj) /'reəriŋ/  
eager; enthusiastic about sth • *We were all packed and raring to go.*
- 9.23 readiness** (n) /'redɪnəs/  
the state of being prepared for sth • *She donned her wedding gown in readiness for the ceremony.* > ready (adj), readily (adv)
- 9.24 span** (n) /spæn/  
a length of time that sth lasts • *Young children have a relatively short attention span.* > span
- 9.25 impediment** (n) /ɪm'pedɪmənt/  
an obstacle • *Omar's nationality was an impediment in his quest to find a job in Italy.*  
> impede (v)
- 9.26 consent** (n) /kən'sent/  
permission to do sth • *Under 18-year-olds cannot marry without parental consent in most European countries.* > consent (v), consenting (adj)
- 9.27 feat** (n) /fi:t/  
an act that demands great strength or skill • *Herakles was revered for achieving great feats of courage and ingenuity.*
- 9.28 fortitude** (n) /'fɔːtɪtjuːd/  
the courage shown under extreme difficulty • *The boys endured the pain of the poisonous stings with great fortitude.*
- 9.29 diminish** (v) /dɪ'mɪnɪʃ/  
become weaker or less • *His savings rapidly diminished as did the chances of finding work.*  
> diminished (adj)
- 9.30 provoke** (v) /prə'vəʊk/  
cause sth to happen; create a certain reaction • *His sudden movement provoked the bear's attack.* > provocation (n), provocative (adj), provocatively (adv)

- 9.31 ageist** (adj) /'eɪdʒɪst/  
discriminatory behaviour against people on grounds of age • *Despite laws to the contrary, ageist attitudes prevail in the job market where employers hire younger staff on lower pay.*  
> ageism (n)

### Adjectives

accomplished	legitimate
ageist	mediocre
agitated	raring
autonomous	sacred
conscientious	sovereign
emancipated	spontaneous
excruciating	upfront
instrumental	venomous
legislative	

## Vocabulary pages 128-129-130

- 9.32 eviction** (n) /ɪ'vɪkʃn/  
the act of making sb leave a house on legal grounds • *If we can't keep up with the rent, we'll soon be facing eviction.* > evict (v)
- 9.33 lease** (n) /liːs/  
an official contract for the use of a property or vehicle for a period of time • *Their landlord will demand a rent increase when their three-year lease expires.* > lease (v)
- 9.34 let** (v) /let/  
rent a house • *We found a small apartment to let in the suburbs.*
- 9.35 sublet** (v) /sʌb'let/  
rent out a property that you rent from sb else • *The Watsons have sublet their spare room temporarily to a student who is on a work placement.*
- 9.36 tenancy** (n) /'tenənsɪ/  
the period during which you rent a property; the right to occupy a property you rent • *They let the house under a one-year tenancy agreement.* > tenant (n), tenanted (adj)
- 9.37 upfront** (adj) /ʌp'frʌnt/  
in advance • *There was an upfront deposit of a month's rent for the flat.* > upfront (adv)
- 9.38 utilities** (n) /juː'tɪlɪtɪz/  
public services such as power or water supplies • *The building had been derelict for years and all the utilities had been disconnected.* > utilise (v)
- 9.39 testify** (v) /'testɪfaɪ/  
make a statement that sth is true • *I can write you a reference to testify to your work experience with the company.* > testament (n)



- 9.40 retain** (v) /rɪ'teɪn/  
keep sth • *Ivana has to apply for a permit every year to retain the right to stay in the country.* > retention (n), retainer (n), retaining (adj)
- 9.41 tender** (v) /'tendə(r)/  
officially submit sth • *The company tendered an estimate for internal repairs required before the building can be occupied.* > tenderness (n), tender (n), tender (adj), tenderly (adv)
- 9.42 relieve sb of sth** (phr v) /rɪ'li:v 'sʌmbədi əv 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
remove a responsibility or role from sb • *As a result of his cowardice, William was relieved of his position as captain.* > relief (n)
- 9.43 give sb their marching orders** (expr) /gɪv 'sʌmbədi ðeə 'mɑ:tʃɪŋ 'ɔ:dəz/  
order sb to leave a job or place • *Caught stealing from the cash register, Simon was given his marching orders.*
- 9.44 paternity leave** (n) /pə'tɜ:nəti li:v/  
a period of time that a father is allowed to take off work to care for his newborn child • *Paul chose to take a few months paternity leave to look after the baby when his wife resumed work.*
- 9.45 delegate** (v) /'delɪgeɪt/  
assign work or part of your responsibilities to sb else • *There was too much work for one person, so Cynthia delegated the more time-consuming parts to her assistant.* > delegate (n), delegation (n)
- 9.46 nominate** (v) /'nɒmɪneɪt/  
officially put forward sb's name for an important role, award, etc. • *Bob was nominated for a Nobel Peace Prize in 2016.* > nomination (n)
- 9.47 downtime** (n) /'daʊn.taɪm/  
a period of time when sb stops working to relax; a period of time when sth is not working • *You look as if you need some downtime; it's months since you've had a break.*
- 9.48 flexitime** (n) /'fleksɪtaɪm/  
a system of flexible working hours • *Working flexitime means that Karen can start work at the office as soon as the kids leave for school at 7:30 and go home at 15:30.*
- 9.49 autonomous** (adj) /ɔ:'tɒnəməs/  
independent • *West Papua became an autonomous province in 2003.* > autonomy (n), autonomously (adv)
- 9.50 emancipated** (adj) /ɪ'mænsɪpeɪtɪd/  
freed from some type of restriction • *Women in western society are more emancipated than their counterparts around the globe due to the effects of political activism in the 20th century.* > emancipate (v), emancipation (n)
- 9.51 enfranchise** (v) /ɪn'fræntʃaɪz/  
give sb the right to vote or to have citizenship • *As a result of the women's Suffrage movement, women were first enfranchised to a limited extent by an act of Parliament in 1918 in the UK.* > enfranchisement (n)  
🗳 Opp: disenfranchise
- 9.52 liberate** (v) /'lɪbəreɪt/  
free a person or country from sth/sb that controls or restricts them • *New legislation was introduced to liberate slaves.* > liberation (n)
- 9.53 sovereign** (adj) /'sɒvrɪn/  
self-governing • *The Kingdom of Scotland was an independent sovereign state until 1707.* > sovereign (n)
- 9.54 monasticism** (n) /mə'næstɪsɪz(ə)m/  
the way of life related to monks or nuns in a monastery • *Buddhist monasticism remains customary in some South-east Asian countries, such as Thailand.* > monastic (adj)
- 9.55 hierarchy** (n) /'haɪərəʃi:/  
the people who hold controlling power in a country or organisation; a system where people are ranked in levels of importance • *She joined the hierarchy, having been elected as a member of parliament in the 1980s.* > hierarchical (adj)
- 9.56 mediocre** (adj) /,mi:'di:əʊkə(r)/  
of ordinary standard or quality, not exceptional • *In view of the team's mediocre performance this season, it's unlikely they will make it to the final rounds.* > mediocrity (n)
- 9.57 conscientious** (adj) /,kɒnʃi'enʃəs/  
giving attention to detail and correctness • *Amelia has always been a conscientious student who consistently completes her assignments to exceptional standards.* > conscience (n), conscientiousness (n), conscientiously (adv)
- 9.58 tribunal** (n) /traɪ'bju:nl/  
a court specialising in a particular type of legal issues • *The decision to strip him of his rank due to unprofessional conduct was taken at a military tribunal.*
- 9.59 saddle sb with sth** (phr v) /'sædl 'sʌmbədi wɪθ 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
give sb responsibility for doing sth unpleasant • *Richard got saddled with the job of cleaning the camp toilets.*
- 9.60 stand in** (phr v) /stænd ɪn/  
replace sb at work, etc. • *Our dentist was on leave, so his partner was standing in for him at the surgery.* > stand-in (n)
- 9.61 step down** (phr v) /step daʊn/  
resign from a position of power • *The party leader stepped down the day after the referendum.*

- 9.62 lay sb off** (phr v) /leɪ 'sʌmbədi ɒf/  
make sb redundant • *When the pit became flooded, hundreds of mine workers were laid off.* > lay-off (n)
- 9.63 lean on sb/sth** (phr v) /liːn ɒn 'sʌmbədi/ 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
depend on sb/sth for support • *Although now in her 20s, she still leans on her family for financial support.*
- 9.64 strike out** (phr v) /straɪk aʊt/  
start doing sth new • *Disillusioned with the job market, Kevin struck out on his own and opened a bicycle repair shop.*

### Verbs

concede	nominate
delegate	perpetuate
deposit	provoke
diminish	retain
enfranchise	revere
let	sublet
liberate	tender
merge	testify

### Phrasal verbs

come to	saddle sb with sth
lay sb off	stand in
lean on sb/sth	step down
relieve sb of sth	strike out

- 9.65 pull your weight** (expr) /puːl jɔː weɪt/  
work hard to the best of your abilities • *You'd better start pulling your weight if you expect to get a pay rise.*
- 9.66 burn the midnight oil** (expr) /bɜːn ðə 'mɪdnɑːt ɔɪl/  
work or study long hours into the night • *Her sleep patterns were totally out of sync after months of burning the midnight oil before the exams.*
- 9.67 be thrown in at the deep end** (expr) /biː θrəʊn ɪn æt ðə diːp end/  
be made to start sth difficult, often without experience • *Tracy was thrown in at the deep end and left in charge of the office when the manager went off sick.*
- 9.68 leave sb to their own devices** (expr) /liːv 'sʌmbədi tə ðeə əʊn dɪ'vaɪsɪz/  
let sb decide what to do on their own • *While their parents were out at work, the twins were left to their own devices for an hour or so after school.*

- 9.69 be wet behind the ears** (exp) /biː wet bɪ'hænd ðə ɪəz/  
be inexperienced • *She has just started her apprenticeship, so she's still a bit wet behind the ears.*
- 9.70 free hand** (n) /friː 'hænd/  
the right to make your own decisions on what to do • *Since he seemed quite capable, the school owner gave David a free hand in designing the course.*
- 9.71 of your own accord** (expr) /əv jɔː əʊn ə'kɔːd/  
without being made to do sth • *Fiona left the company of her own accord, having received a better offer.*
- 9.72 see fit** (expr) /siː fɪt/  
consider sth appropriate to do • *I can give you my opinion, but at the end of the day, you should just do whatever you see fit.*
- 9.73 be at liberty to do sth** (expr) /biː æt tə duː 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
have permission or the right to do sth • *You are at liberty to express your own opinions.*
- 9.74 at will** (expr) /æt wɪl/  
any time you like • *Hospital visiting times are restricted, so relatives and friends are not allowed to remain in the wards at will.*
- 9.75 batch** (n) /bætʃ/  
a group of things dealt with together; an amount of a product made at the same time • *Taxi drivers hovered outside the airport, waiting for the next batch of passengers to arrive.* > batch (v)
- 9.76 a bundle of nerves** (expr) /ə 'bʌndl əv nɜːvz/  
extremely nervous about sth • *He was a bundle of nerves waiting to hear the outcome of the interview.*
- 9.77 bale** (n) /beɪl/  
a large amount of material collected together and tied up • *Bales of hay lay in neat rows in the fields ready for collection.* > bale (v)
- 9.78 deed** (n) /diː/  
an intentional act • *Rescuing the child from the blaze was a brave and heroic deed.*
- 9.79 be no mean feat** (expr) /biː nəʊ miːn fiːt/  
be sth difficult to do • *Running a company and keeping it sustainable is no mean feat.*
- 9.80 pull strings** (expr) /pʊl striːnz/  
use your influence to get an advantage • *Rosemary's friend managed to pull some strings to help her get a scholarship.*
- 9.81 pull the plug on sth** (expr) /pʊl ðə plʌg ɒn 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
stop sth from proceeding • *The government has pulled the plug on student grants.*

- 9.82 pull the punches** (expr) /pʊl ðə ʔʌntʃɪz/  
say sth bad in a polite way to avoid upsetting people • *The reporter certainly didn't pull any punches; he was quite offensive and prying.*
- 9.83 pull up stakes** (expr) /pʊl ʌp steɪks/  
move house and go to live elsewhere (US Eng) • *Nicola's family recently pulled up stakes and emigrated to Canada for a more secure future.*  
✎ Also: pull up sticks (Br Eng)

### Expressions

a bundle of nerves

at will  
of your own accord

be at liberty to do sth  
be no mean feat  
be thrown in at the deep end  
be wet behind the ears  
burn the midnight oil  
give sb their marching orders  
leave sb to their own devices  
pull strings  
pull the plug on sth  
pull the punches  
pull up stakes  
pull your weight  
see fit  
tied to sb's apron strings

- 9.87 etiquette** (n) /'etɪket/  
the rules of polite culturally acceptable behaviour • *Before travelling abroad, it's wise to read up on the local etiquette to avoid embarrassing moments.*
- 9.88 manoeuvre** (n) /mə'nu:və(r)/  
a movement to control the position or direction of sth • *Our pilot carried out some skilful manoeuvres to avoid flying into the eye of the storm.* > manoeuvre (v)
- 9.89 squatter** (n) /'skwɒtə(r)/  
sb who moves into sb else's property and lives there without paying • *The abandoned factory has been taken over by squatters.* > squat (v)
- 9.90 dress code** (n) /dres kʊəd/  
the rules that state which clothes are appropriate • *Teachers and students are expected to respect the school dress code.*
- 9.91 explicitly** (adv) /ɪk'splɪsɪtli/  
in a clear and direct way • *The students were explicitly told to submit their assignments by the end of the month.* > explicit (adj)  
✎ Opp: implicitly
- 9.92 spontaneous** (adj) /spɒn'teɪniəs/  
doing things suddenly without prior planning; done without prior planning • *The manager was stunned at Timothy's spontaneous resignation.* > spontaneity (n), spontaneously (adv)

### Adverbs

disproportionately      explicitly

## Grammar pages 131-132-133

- 9.84 deposit** (n) /de'pɒzɪt/  
a down payment made in advance • *Malcolm has been saving up for a deposit to buy a flat.*  
> deposit (v)
- 9.85 orientation** (n) /ˌɔ:riən'teɪʃn/  
a period of preparatory training • *We haven't started lessons yet as we're having a week of orientation to get used to university life.*  
> orientate (v)  
✎ Opp: disorientation

## Listening page 134

- 9.86 tied to sb's apron strings** (expr) /taɪd tə 'sʌmbədɪz 'eɪprən strɪŋz/  
dependent on sb, especially your mother  
• *Isn't it time you got a place of your own, son? You can't stay tied to my apron strings forever!*

## Speaking page 135

- 9.93 concede** (v) /kən'si:d/  
admit that sb else is correct or sth is true  
• *Elena conceded that learning to drive was not as easy as it seemed.* > concession (n)
- 9.94 adulthood** (n) /'ædʌlthʊd/  
the state of being an adult • *At what age do you consider a child has reached adulthood?*

## Writing pages 136-137

- 9.95 accomplished** (adj) /ə'kʌmplɪʃt/  
highly skilled and having achieved a lot  
• *Once the naughty boy of the class, he had grown up to become a calm and accomplished young man.* > accomplish (v), accomplishment (n)

- 9.96 rose-coloured glasses** (n) /rəʊz 'kʌləd glɑːsɪz/  
an unrealistic over-optimistic view of life  
• *He's rather naïve and tends to view the world through rose-coloured glasses.*
- 9.97 merge** (v) /mɜːdʒ/  
blend together with other things so the differences are not clear; join two or more things to form one • *Feelings of anxiety merged with happy excitement as he approached his sold home.* > merger (n)
- 9.98 anecdote** (n) /'æniːkdəʊt/  
a short amusing or interesting story about an experience or other event • *In the staff room, teachers exchanged amusing anecdotes about their students.* > anecdotal (adj)
- 9.99 instrumental** (adj) /ɪnstrə'mentl/  
having a key influence • *Her aunt was instrumental in getting her the job.*  
> instrument (n)
- 9.100 disposable income** (n) /dɪ'spəʊzəbl 'ɪnkʌm/  
the money you have available after making tax payments, etc. • *Many families are struggling to make ends meet as their disposable income has shrunk in the recent years.*
- 9.101 eye-opener** (n) /'aɪ,əʊpənə(r)/  
a surprising experience or information that makes you understand more about sth  
• *Helping out at the soup kitchen for the first time was a real eye-opener.* > eye-opening (adj)
- 9.102 facet** (n) /'fæsɪt/  
one part of sth • *The article covered the most important facets of academic life.*

### Compound nouns

disposable income	rose-coloured glasses
dress code	tree ring
eye-opener	
paternity leave	

- 9.104 deposit** (v) /dɪ'pɒzɪt/  
leave behind a layer of a substance on the surface of sth • *The retreating floods had deposited a layer of mud and gravel on the town streets.* > deposit (n)
- 9.105 remains** (n) /rɪ'meɪnz/  
parts of sth left when the rest has been used or removed • *They uncovered the remains of an ancient warrior while excavating the sanctuary.* > remain (v), remainder (n), remaining (adj)
- 9.106 remoteness** (n) /rɪ'məʊtnəs/  
the state of being far away from inhabited areas • *The geographical remoteness of the island makes import costs high.* > remote (adj), remotely (adv)
- 9.107 tree ring** (n) /triː rɪŋ/  
the circular lines visible in wood when a tree is cut horizontally across the trunk • *As well as calculating the age of a tree, scientists can use old tree rings to detect the effects of weather patterns throughout the centuries.*

### Nouns

adulthood	hallucination
anecdote	impediment
bale	initiation
batch	lease
burden	manifestation
calcite	manoeuvre
consent	maturity
deed	milestone
deference	monasticism
deposit	mortality
discrimination	orientation
downtime	ranks
enforcement	readiness
etiquette	remains
eviction	remoteness
facet	span
feat	squatter
flexitime	tenancy
fortitude	tribunal
free hand	utilities

## Video 9: Best Job Ever!

page 138

- 9.103 calcite** (n) /'kælsɪt/  
an opaque or clear carbonate mineral that forms part of major rocks • *A phosphorescent light glowed from some of the calcites on the cave walls in the cavers' torchlight.* > calcify (v), calcification (n)



## Reading

pages 140-141

- 10.1 billboard** (n) /'bɪlbɔːd/  
a large board where advertisements are posted on a building or on a roadside  
• *Thanks to local activists, most of the unsightly billboards which festooned the national roads have been removed by law.*
- 10.2 juggernaut** (n) /'dʒʌgənɔːt/  
a very large organisation which has overwhelming power • *Independent films cannot easily compete with the Hollywood juggernaut.*
- 10.3 platform** (n) /'plætfɔːm/  
an opportunity to make your ideas or beliefs known publicly • *She uses Facebook as a platform to air her personal views.*
- 10.4 cut-throat** (adj) /kʌt θrəʊt/  
aggressively competitive • *She could not afford any bad press that might destroy her name in the cut-throat world of modelling.*
- 10.5 sitcom** (n) /'sɪtkɒm/  
a TV comedy series based on the same group of characters in funny situations • *Wendy never misses an episode of the sitcom Absolutely Fabulous reruns.*
- 10.6 endorsement** (n) /ɪn'dɔːsmənt/  
a statement made by sb to show they support sth • *Sales of the scent have increased since its endorsement from the popular actor.*  
➤ endorse (v)
- 10.7 foray** (n) /'fɒreɪ/  
an effort to become involved in a different area of activity • *He made a short-lived foray into the business world before becoming an author.*
- 10.8 replete** (adj) /rɪ'pliːt/  
full with sth • *The article was replete with factual errors.*
- 10.9 falsehood** (n) /'fɔːlshʊd/  
the state of being untrue • *They set up an experiment to test whether the advertising claims reading the shampoo were truth or falsehood.* ➤ falsify (v), false (adj), falsely (adv)
- 10.10 pseudo-** (prefix) /'suːdəʊ/  
false; pretending to be true • *The pseudo-celebrity regularly appears on breakfast TV chat shows.*
- 10.11 medication** (n) /,medɪ'keɪʃn/  
a form of medicine • *You should avoid driving whilst taking certain medications.* ➤ medicate (v), medicated (adj)
- 10.12 mandatory** (adj) /'mændətəri/  
compulsory by law • *It is mandatory for food companies to list ingredients on the labels of their products.* ➤ mandate (v), mandate (n)
- 10.13 mindful** (adj) /'maɪndfl/  
aware; conscious • *Mindful of the risks involved, he decided not to attempt the climb alone.* ➤ mindfulness (n)
- 10.14 go down** (phr v) /gəʊ daʊn/  
be received or remembered in a particular way • *The film went down well with the critics.*
- 10.15 gushing** (adj) /'gʌʃɪŋ/  
over-enthusiastic in an insincere way • *Her gushing endorsement of the washing powder left viewers unconvinced.* ➤ gush (v), gush (n)
- 10.16 disclaimer** (n) /dɪs'kleɪmə(r)/  
a statement which shows that a person or organisation, etc. rejects responsibility for sth • *The packaging included a disclaimer that the supplements were not recognised as having medicinal value.* ➤ disclaim (v)
- 10.17 semblance** (n) /'seɪbləns/  
an outward appearance of sth which may not be a reality • *The advertisement bore no semblance of truth whatsoever.*
- 10.18 authenticity** (n) /,ɔːθən'tɪsəti/  
the quality of being genuine • *The authenticity of their claims are open to question.*  
➤ authenticate (v), authentication (n), authentic (adj), authentically (adv)
- 10.19 intimacy** (n) /'ɪntɪməsi/  
closeness between people • *The blogger developed an intimacy with her followers which helped promote her website.* ➤ intimate (v), intimate (adj), intimately (adv)
- 10.20 trim** (adj) /trɪm/  
slim and fit-looking • *When we saw him perform live, he looked nothing like the photoshopped trim figure from the profile image.* ➤ trimness (n)
- 10.21 infusion** (n) /ɪn'fjuːʒən/  
a hot drink made from herbs or fruit • *A soothing chamomile infusion will assist relaxation.* ➤ infuse (v)
- 10.22 gruelling** (adj) /'gruːəlɪŋ/  
extremely difficult and tiring • *It was a gruelling eight-hour flight made worse by the extra delay.*
- 10.23 dismantle** (v) /dɪs'mæntl/  
take sth to pieces • *The computer had to be completely dismantled to replace the part.*  
➤ dismantling (n)

- 10.24 credibility** (n) /ˌkredəˈbɪləti/  
the quality that makes sb appear trustworthy and respectable • *The scandal destroyed his credibility as a politician.* > credit (v), credible (adj), credibly (adv)
- 10.25 attainable** (adj) /əˈteɪnəbl/  
that can be achieved or reached • *You would be more self-content if you set more realistically attainable goals instead of wearing yourself out.* > attain (v), attainment (n)
- 10.26 vouch for sb/sth** (phr v) /vaʊtʃ fɔː ˈsʌmbədi/ ˈsʌmθɪŋ/  
state that you can verify the good character of sb/sth • *Can you vouch for Judy's work experience?*
- 10.27 rub off** (phr v) /rʌb ɒf/  
have an influence on sb/sth else so that it adopts some of the same qualities, beliefs, etc. • *His optimism never fails to rub off on his companions.*
- 10.28 sneaky** (adj) /ˈsniːki/  
secretive or deceptive • *That was a sneaky trick you pulled on your brother.* > sneak (v)
- 10.29 camouflage** (v) /ˈkæməflaɪz/  
cover the appearance of sth to make it look like sth else • *His natural looks are well camouflaged by hairpieces and botox.* > camouflage (n)
- 10.30 suspend** (v) /səˈspend/  
stop an activity • *Authorities have finally suspended the search for the missing plane.* > suspension (n), suspended (adj)
- 10.31 snappy** (adj) /ˈsnæpi/  
witty and easily remembered • *T-shirts bearing snappy slogans hung outside the souvenir shop.*
- 10.32 pepper sth with sth** (expr) /ˈpepə(r) ˈsʌmθɪŋ wɪθ ˈsʌmθɪŋ/  
include large quantities of sth repeatedly in sth • *Her Twitter feed is peppered with quotes from others more famous than she will ever be.* > pepper (n)
- 10.33 plug** (v) /plʌg/  
give words of praise to promote sth • *In his cookery book, the chef avoided reference to specific brands in order to avoid plugging them.* > plug (n)
- 10.34 efficacy** (n) /ˈefɪkəsi/  
the ability to have the desired effect • *Exhaustive tests have been carried out to assess the efficacy of the medication.* > efficacious (adj)
- 10.35 manipulation** (n) /məˌnɪpjʊˈleɪʃn/  
the act of controlling sb/sth by making them behave in a certain way • *Political campaigners are adept at the manipulation of public opinion.* > manipulate (v), manipulative (adj)
- 10.36 candid** (adj) /ˈkændɪd/  
(of photos) taken unexpectedly while the subject is behaving naturally; open and direct • *The magazine was full of candid shots of celebrities, supposedly caught unawares as they went about their daily lives.* > candour (n), candidly (adv)
- 10.37 unwitting** (adj) /ʌnˈwɪtɪŋ/  
unaware of what is happening • *She became the unwitting victim of a telephone scam.* > wit (n), unwittingly (adv)
- 10.38 disclosure** (n) /dɪsˈklɔʊʒə(r)/  
the act of revealing sth that was previously unknown • *She took the publishers to court over the public disclosure of her letters.* > disclose (v)
- 10.39 versus** (prep) /ˈvɜːsəs/  
used to compare two different things • *A child can figure out the difference between hearsay versus facts.*
- 10.40 get into hot water** (expr) /get ɪntə hɒt wɔːtə/  
get into trouble • *You're liable to get into hot water if you put too much personal information for the whole world to see on social media.*
- 10.41 take a dim view of sth** (expr) /teɪk ə dɪm vjuː əv ˈsʌmθɪŋ/  
disapprove of sth • *Our science teacher took a dim view of being called a geek.*
- 10.42 from scratch** (expr) /frəm skrætʃ/  
from the beginning • *When I realised my essay was off topic, I had to start writing it from scratch again.*
- 10.43 rake in sth** (phr v) /reɪk ɪn ˈsʌmθɪŋ/  
collect sth, especially money, in large amounts • *That actor must be raking it in from the coffee ads.*
- 10.44 tantalising** (adj) /ˈtæntəlaɪzɪŋ/  
tempting • *The tantalising view of the tropical beach beckoned to them from the glossy ad.* > tantalise (v), tantalisingly (adv)
- 10.45 make money hand over fist** (expr) /meɪk mʌni hænd əʊvə fɪst/  
make a lot of money very quickly • *The skilled hacker has been making money hand over fist from online gaming.*
- 10.46 staggering** (adj) /ˈstæɡərɪŋ/  
very surprising • *She has a staggering number of followers who read her blogs on social media.* > stagger (v)
- 10.47 overt** (adj) /əʊˈvɜːt/  
publicly open • *Pay no attention to their overt claims that using a credit card will solve your problems.*
- 10.48 fall foul of sth** (expr) /fɔːl faʊəv ˈsʌmθɪŋ/  
do sth wrong or illegal often without intending to • *The film fell foul of the censorship board.*

- 10.49 explicit** (adj) /ɪk'splɪsɪt/  
open and direct • *The reasons why the post were deleted should be made explicit.*  
➤ explicitly (adv)
- 10.50 monetary** (adj) /'mʌnɪtri/  
related to money • *How can they market goods of little monetary value at such extortionate prices?*
- 10.51 egocentric** (adj) /,egəʊ'sentɪk/  
self-centred and not considering the needs of others • *Who has time to read through all the egocentric messages and photos on social media?* ➤ ego (n), egoism (n), egoist (n)
- 10.52 effusive** (adj) /ɪ'fjuːsɪv/  
appearing to be overly emotional • *I didn't know quite how to respond to her effusive welcome since we were practically strangers.*  
➤ effusion (n), effusively (adv)

### Expressions

fall foul of sth  
from scratch  
get into hot water  
make money hand over fist  
take a dim view of sth

### Nouns: marketing

asset	infomercial
benchmark	infusion
billboard	jingle
consumerism	juggernaut
desolation	materialism
disclaimer	medication
disclosure	merchandising
endorsement	momentum
epitome	platform
falsehood	recession
foray	saturation
franchise	semblance
immediacy	sitcom

- 10.55 materialism** (n) /mə'tɪəriəlɪz(ə)m/  
the way of life that puts money and possessions over everything else • *The economic downturn has led us to question the ethics of materialism.* ➤ materialist (n), materialistic (adj)
- 10.56 merchandising** (n) /'mɜːtʃəndaɪzɪŋ/  
the activity or process of advertising and marketing goods • *The trashy novel and film became a box office success only through clever merchandising.* ➤ merchandise (v), merchandise (n)
- 10.57 momentum** (n) /mə'mentəm/  
a moving object's (or similar metaphor's) retention of kinetic energy • *Support for the leading candidate began to lose momentum as the election day drew near.* ➤ momentous (adj), momentarily (adv)
- 10.58 franchise** (n) /'fræntʃaɪz/  
an agreement between a company and sb who wants to market its products or services using its brand name in a given place • *Airport baggage handling services are run through a private business franchise.* ➤ franchise (v), franchisee (n)
- 10.59 discern** (v) /dɪ'sɜːn/  
understand the meaning of or notice sth  
• *It was difficult to discern the source of the misinformation.* ➤ discernible (adj), discernibly (adv)
- 10.60 vanity** (n) /'vænəti/  
extreme pride in your own appearance or abilities • *Are compulsive selfies acts of vanity or a sign of insecurity?* ➤ vain (adj), vain (adv)
- 10.61 typographical** (adj) /,taɪpə'græfɪkl/  
related to typing and the preparing of written material for print • *His bank statement showed a staggering balance, as a result of a typographical error.* ➤ typography, typographer (n), typographically (adv)  
✎ Syn: typographic
- 10.62 promotional** (adj) /prə'məʊʃənəl/  
related to advertising • *They sent out a promotional email to all their customers.*  
➤ promote (v), promotion (n), promoter (n)

### Adjectives

attainable	overt
candid	promotional
cut-throat	replete
effusive	snappy
egocentric	sneaky
explicit	staggering
gruelling	tantalsing
inescapable	trim
mandatory	typographical
mindful	unwitting

## Vocabulary pages 142-143-144

- 10.53 infomercial** (n) /,ɪnfəʊ'mɜːʃl/  
an extended advertisement that emulates documentary style • *Until the last scene of the infomercial, we'd made several guesses what it was advertising.*
- 10.54 jingle** (n) /'dʒɪŋɡl/  
a short piece of music used in an advertisement • *You know you've been watching too much TV when you start humming the jingles.* ➤ jingle (v)

- 10.63 classified** (adj) /'klæsɪfaɪd/  
a small advertisement in a newspaper or website placed by people who want to buy or sell goods or services, etc. • *They sold their old car through an online classified ad.*
- 10.64 market share** (n) /'mɑːkɪt ʃeə(r)/  
the relative number of sales of a product that one company has compared with sales of all companies selling the same thing • *He claims to have a 60 % share of the international publishing market.*
- 10.65 leaflet drop** (n) /'liːflət drɒp/  
a distribution of large numbers of advertising leaflets to homes, etc. • *As a student, he earned some cash by doing leaflet drops for a promotional company.*
- 10.66 trade paper** (n) /treɪd 'peɪpə(r)/  
a newspaper with news exclusively related to a particular type of business • *The latest word in the trade papers is that a merger of the telecommunication giants is imminent.*
- 10.67 cajole** (v) /kə'dʒəʊl/  
persuade sb to do sth through kind words • *She had to be cajoled into doing the interview.*
- 10.68 coax** (v) /kəʊks/  
encourage; persuade • *Len tried to coax his father into buying him a car.* > coaxing (n), coaxing (adj)
- 10.69 entice** (v) /ɪn'taɪs/  
attract or persuade sb to do sth • *Promises of cash rewards are used to entice clients to change their phone providers.* > enticement (n), enticing (adj), enticingly (adv)
- 10.70 hype** (v) /haɪp/  
exaggerate the qualities of sth to attract attention to it • *Stunning landscape images were used to hype up the hotel's location.* > hype (n)
- 10.71 induce** (v) /ɪn'djuːs/  
cause sth to happen; persuade sb to do sth • *Even the offer of a bonus could not induce her to stay another moment in the job.* > inducement (n), induction (n)
- 10.72 pitch** (v) /pɪtʃ/  
promote a product; put forward (an idea) • *The energy bars are pitched as a healthy snack despite containing harmful additives.* > pitch (n)
- 10.73 sway** (v) /sweɪ/  
cause sth to change; cause sb to change an opinion • *Currency rates began to sway dramatically when the election result was known.* > sway (n)
- 10.74 tout** (v) /taʊt/  
try to persuade people to buy sth • *Street vendors touted their wares at every corner.* > tout (n)
- 10.75 woo** (v) /wuː/  
try to persuade sb to support sth • *Targeted offers of cut-price vouchers are aimed to woo customers to overpriced restaurants.*
- 10.76 equate** (v) /i'kweɪt/  
regard sth as the same as sth else • *High earnings do not equate with happiness, but they might help make life more comfortable.* > equation (n), equality (n), equal (adj), equally (adv)
- 10.77 gear sth to/towards sb/sth** (phr v) /geə 'sʌmθɪŋ tuː/tə'wɔːdz 'sʌmθɪŋ/'sʌmbədi/  
adapt sth to make it suitable for a particular purpose • *The ad for snack bars was clearly geared towards working parents.*
- 10.78 saturation** (n) /,sætʃə'reɪʃn/  
the point where sth cannot be added to because there is already an abundance • *The best way to avoid saturation coverage of news events is to switch off the TV and media threads.* > saturate (v)
- 10.79 restraint** (n) /rɪ'streɪnt/  
sth that prevents sth increasing • *Those annoying marketing calls keep coming without restraint.* > restrain (v), restraining (adj)
- 10.80 charisma** (n) /kə'rɪzmə/  
the quality to charm and impress others • *She lacked the charisma and finesse of her parents.* > charismatic (adj)
- 10.81 hypocrite** (n) /'hɪpəkrɪt/  
sb who pretends to believe in or support sth that they don't • *He's always recommending products he's never used himself. What a hypocrite!* > hypocrisy (n), hypocritical (adj), hypocritically (adv)
- 10.82 acquire** (v) /ə'kwəɪə(r)/  
obtain by buying or receiving as a gift; gain by your own efforts • *Miranda has acquired a reputation as film director.* > acquisition (n), acquired (adj)
- 10.83 compliment** (n) /'kɒmplɪmənt/  
a comment or gesture that expresses admiration or praise • *It was a great compliment to be invited to dinner by the mayor.* > compliment (v), complimentary (adj)
- 10.84 fraud** (n) /frɔːd/  
a crime of cheating a person or organisation out of money • *The gang were involved in large-scale internet fraud, cheating small companies out of cash.* > fraudulent (adj)
- 10.85 wear sb down** (phr v) /weə 'sʌmbədi daʊn/  
tire sb out so they agree to do sth • *The sales staff's approach is to wear customers down with repeated phone calls until they give in and buy something. It's water-on-a-stone tactics.*



- 10.86 suck sb/sth in** (phr v) /sʌk'sʌmbədi/'sʌmθɪŋ in/  
make sb get involved in sth • *Don't get sucked in to pyramid marketing schemes; the only one who profits is the company owner.*
- 10.87 splash out** (phr v) /splæʃ aʊt/  
spend a lot of money at once • *With discounts that were almost too good to be true, she splashed out and treated herself to a couple of new outfits.*
- 10.88 flick through sth** (phr v) /flɪk θruː 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
look quickly through written material, photos, information, etc. • *In search of a housewarming gift for his friend, Andy flicked through the pages of the brochure from that well-known Swedish furniture outlet.*
- 10.89 vacant** (adj) /'veɪkənt/  
unresponsive as though devoid of thought • *My enquiry about the comparative technical specs of the various TVs on sale was met with a shrug and a vacant look from the sales assistant.* > vacate (v), vacancy (n), vacantly (adv)
- 10.90 persistence** (n) /pə'sɪstəns/  
the act of continuing to try to do sth in a determined way despite difficulties • *My persistence paid off when the company finally agreed to give me a refund for the faulty printer.* > persist (v), persistent (adj), persistently (adv)
- 10.91 strive** (v) /straɪv/  
try very hard • *The shop strives to retain its existing customers through loyalty incentives.* > strife (n) (adv)
- 10.92 inescapable** (adj) /,ɪnɪ'skeɪpəbl/  
that cannot be avoided; unavoidable • *Counting their losses, they came to the inescapable conclusion that it was time to close the business.* > inescapably (adv)
- 10.93 tank** (v) /tænk/  
fail by reaching a point with no hope of growth • *When Greece's economy tanked, it translated into the closing of numerous family businesses.* > tank (n), tanker (n)
- 10.94 recession** (n) /rɪ'seɪʃn/  
an economic period when trade and production levels are at a low, resulting in high unemployment • *The world economy has been in deep recession for the past decade.* > recede (v), recess (n), recessive (adj), recessively (adv)
- 10.95 scorn** (n) /skɔːn/  
an attitude towards sb/sth that you regard as stupid or inferior • *His suggestion was met with scorn from the store manager.* > scorn (v), scornful (adj), scornfully (adv)
- 10.96 satire** (n) /'sætəɪə(r)/  
a form of criticism through humour often to exaggerate weaknesses in an amusing way • *Aristophanes masterfully addressed social issues through satire in ancient time.* > satirise (v), satirical (adj), satirically (adv)
- 10.97 sarcasm** (n) /'sɑːkæzəm/  
the use of comments that have an opposite meaning to what they say to criticise or make fun of sb • *'So the dog ate your homework again,' said the teacher with more than a hint of sarcasm.* > sarcastic (adj), sarcastically (adv)
- 10.98 asset** (n) /'æset/  
anything of value which a person or company owns • *After the company declared bankruptcy, its assets were sold off.*
- 10.99 benchmark** (n) /'bentʃmaːk/  
a standard used to draw comparisons against • *The country's national health service was seen as a benchmark for the rest of Europe.* > benchmark (v)
- 10.100 intimidate** (v) /ɪn'tɪmɪdeɪt/  
frighten sb into doing sth you want them to • *The bank tried to intimidate them into settling our debts out of court.* > intimidation (n), intimidating (adj)
- 10.101 fracture** (v) /'fræktʃə(r)/  
break sth; split sth into pieces so it can't function • *The ranks of the opposition party fractured after their electoral defeat.* > fracture (n), fractious (adj)
- 10.102 repression** (n) /rɪ'preʃn/  
the use of force to restrict a group of people • *Greeks suffered religious and other forms of repression during the Ottoman rule.* > repress (v), repressive (adj), repressively (adv)
- 10.103 desolation** (n) /,desə'leɪʃn/  
the feeling of loneliness and sadness; the state of a place that has been abandoned or destroyed • *He lived with a constant sense of desolation during the long period of unemployment.* > desolate (v), desolate (adj)

### Nouns: behaviour & attitude

authenticity	persistence
charisma	repression
compliment	restraint
credibility	sarcasm
hypocrite	satire
inferiority	scorn
intimacy	vanity
manipulation	fraud

### Phrasal verbs

butt in	rake in sth
flick through sth	rub off
gear sth to/towards sb/sth	splash out
go down	suck sb/sth in
pepper sth with sth	vouch for sb/sth
	wear sb down

## Speaking

page 149

- 10.104 butt in** (phr v) /bʌt ɪn/  
interrupt rudely • *Sorry to butt in, but I've just had some serious news.*
- 10.105 consumerism** (n) /kən'sju:məɪz(ə)m/  
the idea that people should buy and use goods in large quantities for a society to progress  
• *The family got into extreme debt due to excessive consumerism.* > consume (v), consumer (n), consumption (n)
- 10.106 status symbol** (n) /'steɪtəs 'sɪmbəl/  
sth that people believe to show high social status and wealth • *Large cars, once a status symbol, have simply become a tax burden for most.*

### Compound nouns

leaflet drop	status symbol
market share	trade paper
raw material	

## Writing

pages 150-151

- 10.107 blight** (v) /blaɪt/  
destroy or damage sth • *The country has been blighted by public sector redundancies and company closures.* > blight (n)

- 10.108 raw material** (n) /rɔː mə'tɪəriəl/  
the basic untreated components used to make sth • *China imports a number of raw materials from Australia for use in manufacturing.*
- 10.109 swell** (v) /swel/  
increase in size • *Due to the heavy rains, the river began to swell and burst its banks.*  
> swell (n), swelling (n), swollen (adj)
- 10.110 sparingly** (adv) /'speərɪŋli/  
using sth carefully in small amounts  
• *Use inverted forms sparingly in your text.*  
> spare (v), spare (n), sparing (adj)
- 10.111 immediacy** (n) /ɪ'mɪ:diəsi/  
the direct importance and resulting urgency  
• *Texting lacks the immediacy of face-to-face discussion.* > immediate (adj), immediately (adv)
- 10.112 epitomise** (v) /ɪ'pɪtəmi/  
be an accurate example of sth • *His books epitomised the living conditions in post-war Britain.* > epitome (n)
- 10.113 epitome** (n) /ɪ'pɪtəmi/  
an accurate example of sth • *Materialism was regarded as the epitome of success.*  
> epitomise (v)
- 10.114 inferiority** (n) /ɪn,fɪəri'brəti/  
the state of being less important or of lower quality than sth/sb else • *The book goes a long way to debunk the myth of racial inferiority.* > inferior (adj)

## Video 10: Skateboards from Trash

page 152

- 10.115 repurpose** (v) /,rɪ'pɜ:pəs/  
adapt sth to make it suitable for another purpose • *He repurposed his great-grandmother's old sewing machine to make a stylish table.*

# 11 Say Cheese!

## Reading

pages 156-157

- 11.1 entity** (n) /'entəti/  
sth that exists independently in its own right  
• *His company is no longer a separate entity since its acquisition by the corporation.*
- 11.2 fringe** (n) /frɪndʒ/  
the outer area of sth • *The magazine remains on the fringe of mainstream media.* > fringe (v), fringe (adj)
- 11.3 telephoto lens** (n) /ˌtelɪfəʊtəʊ 'lɛnz/  
a camera lens that adjusts to produce large images of distant subjects • *Through the telephoto lens, he captured every detail of the nesting eagle on top of the rock.*
- 11.4 scourge** (n) /skɜːdʒ/  
sth/sb that causes terrible damage • *The recession has been the scourge of the decade.* > scourge (v)
- 11.5 poignant** (adj) /'pɔɪnjənt/  
emotionally moving • *The empty shops were a poignant reminder of the economic situation.* > poignancy (n), poignantly (adv)
- 11.6 convict** (v) /kən'vɪkt/  
officially declare that sb is guilty of a crime  
• *They were convicted of murder and sentenced to life imprisonment.* > convict (n), convicted (adj)
- 11.7 stumble** (v) /'stʌmbəl/  
walk in an awkward uncontrolled way  
• *Hearing the alarm, he stumbled out of bed still half asleep.* > stumble (n)
- 11.8 paparazzo** (n) /ˌpæpə'rætsəʊ/  
a press photographer who follows famous people to photograph them • *Despite her valiant attempts to stay out of the press, one paparazzo was particularly persistent and snapped her on the patio in her pyjamas.*  
📖 Plural: paparazzi
- 11.9 documentary** (n) /ˌdɒkjumen'teəriən/  
sb who makes documentaries • *Debbie took on a new role as a documentary portraying social issues after being made redundant when the newspaper closed down.*  
> document (v), document (n), documentation (n)
- 11.10 bureau** (n) /'bjʊərəʊ/  
organisation that collects and provides information • *You can see what jobs are available at the employment bureau.*  
> bureaucrat (n), bureaucracy (n), bureaucratic (adj)
- 11.11 decimate** (v) /'desɪmeɪt/  
seriously damage sth • *His career was decimated by the company closure.*  
> decimation (n)
- 11.12 gripping** (adj) /'grɪpɪŋ/  
very interesting and exciting • *The film was a gripping tale of courage and endurance.*  
> grip (v), grip (n)
- 11.13 hard-hitting** (adj) /hɑːd 'hɪtɪŋ/  
openly and honestly critical • *Deeply offended by the interviewer's hard-hitting questions, he got up and walked out of the studio.*
- 11.14 scratch the surface** (expr) /skrætʃ ðə 'sɜːfɪs/  
uncover only a small part of an issue • *The documentary was interesting, but was lacking in detail and clearly only scratched the surface of the main problem.*
- 11.15 delve into sth** (phr v) /delv ɪntə'sʌmθɪŋ/  
research sth thoroughly • *Detectives delved into his personal correspondence and found evidence of his dirty dealings.*
- 11.16 subgenre** (n) /'sʌbˌʒɔːrə/  
a type of media, literature, etc. that differs from the others within the same category • *Hard rock is considered a subgenre of rock music in the wider sense.*
- 11.17 proverbially** (adv) /prə'vɜːbiəli/  
in a way that is widely known and understood  
• *The reporters were proverbially dogged in their pursuit of a scoop.* > proverb (n), proverbial (adj)
- 11.18 fly on the wall** (expr) /flaɪ ɒn ðə wɔːl/  
sb who listens to others without being seen  
• *I'd love to be a fly on the wall to see her reaction when she finds out what happened.*
- 11.19 impartially** (adv) /ɪm'pɑːʃəli/  
objectively; without taking sides • *Not enough of the news seems to be presented completely impartially, as so many journalists have their own political agenda.* > impartiality (n), impartial (adj)
- 11.20 strike a chord** (expr) /straɪk ə kɔːd/  
arouse interest by saying sth that people can relate to • *The documentary on bullying struck a chord within the education sector.*
- 11.21 discreet** (adj) /dɪ'skriːt/  
careful not to reveal sth secret • *She was always very discreet about her family background.* > discretion (n), discreetly (adv)

- 11.22 peek** (n) /pi:k/  
a quick, sometimes secretive, look at sth  
• *I took a quick peek at the clock, hoping that the interview would end soon.* > peek (v)
- 11.23 insatiable** (adj) /ɪn'seɪfəbl/  
not able to be satisfied • *Underlying her insatiable need for attention, lies an inferiority complex.* > insatiably (adv)
- 11.24 perception** (n) /pə'sepʃn/  
the way sth is regarded • *The hard-hitting documentary changed the public perception of milk production.* > perceive (v), perceptible (adj), perceptibly (adv)
- 11.25 stalk** (v) /stɔ:k/  
follow and observe sb without their permission  
• *She was sick of being stalked by the paparazzi.* > stalker (n)
- 11.26 door stepping** (n) /dɔ: 'stepɪŋ/  
watching sb's home • *Tired of reporters and their door stepping, he moved house to a secret location registered under a pseudonym.* > doorstep (n)
- 11.27 have it both ways** (expr) /hæv ɪt bəʊθ weɪz/  
benefit in an impossible way from two contrasting approaches • *How can you stay out of the public eye if you want to be famous? You can't have it both ways.*
- 11.28 emphatically** (adv) /ɪm'fætɪkli/  
forcefully stressing a point • *The politician emphatically denied any connection with the off-shore bank.* > emphasise (v), emphasis (n), emphatic (adj)
- 11.29 unflattering** (adj) /ʌn'flætərɪŋ/  
making sb/sth look less attractive than they are or would prefer to be seen • *The press photographers just lap up unflattering shots of celebrities without their make-up on.*
- 11.30 seedier** (adj) /'si:diə(r)/  
less pleasant, often linked with immoral activities • *He prefers to keep quiet about the seedier side of his extramarital relationships.* > seediness (n)
- 11.31 drive sth home** (expr) /draɪv'slʌmθɪŋ həʊm/  
strongly get a point across; forcefully convey a meaning • *She drove home the point that the tax payers were entitled to know how their money was being spent.*
- 11.32 hint** (n) /hɪnt/  
a very small amount of sth • *There was more than a hint of sarcasm in her voice.* > hint (v)
- 11.33 symbolic** (adj) /sɪm'bɒlɪk/  
important in terms of an idea implied • *He removed the sweeping statement from his blog as a symbolic gesture of apology.* > symbolise (v), symbol (n), symbolically (adv)

- 11.34 compliant** (adj) /kəm'plaɪənt/  
easily obeying particular rules; very willing to agree with sth/sb • *The editor became less compliant to the journalist's suggestion to include the article when he received a call from the prime minister's office.* > comply (v), compliance (n)
- 11.35 skyrocket** (v) /'skaɪrɒkɪt/  
rise or increase rapidly • *Sales of the newspaper skyrocketed with the exclusive report.*
- 11.36 adrenaline** (n) /ə'drenəlɪn/  
a hormone that increases the heart-rate and energy level • *The prospect of capturing the couple together on film got the photographer's adrenaline flowing.*
- 11.37 sb's/sth's days are numbered** (expr) /'sʌmbədɪz/'sʌmθɪŋz deɪz ɑ: 'nʌmbəd/  
sb/sth will not continue or be successful much longer • *Her days as an award-winning author are numbered as she seems to be running out of ideas.*
- 11.38 superficial** (adj) /,su:pə'fɪʃl/  
only considering the obvious aspects of sth  
• *His report gave only a superficial analysis of the political problem.* > superficiality (n), superficially (adv)

## Vocabulary pages 158-159-160

- 11.39 lampoon** (v) /læm'pu:n/  
criticise in an amusing way • *The cartoonist has a talent for hilariously lampooning celebrities.* > lampoon (n)
- 11.40 recluse** (n) /rɪ'klu:s/  
sb who chooses to live alone and avoids company • *The former star now prefers to live as a recluse in the company of her pets.* > reclusive (adj)
- 11.41 scoop** (n) /sku:p/  
an important news story that is the first to be published on the topic • *The tabloid scoop revealed that the ageing star was suffering from a serious illness.* > scoop (v)
- 11.42 slander** (n) /'slɑ:ndə(r)/  
a spoken statement which gives false information aiming to damage sb's reputation  
• *She took the talk show host to court for slander.* > slander (v)
- 11.43 conman** (n) /'kɒnmæn/  
sb who deceives sb to gain money • *The elderly widow was cheated out of her savings by a conman.* > con (v), con (n)
- 11.44 buffoonish** (adj) /bə'fu:nɪʃ/  
silly; clownish • *His clumsy denial of the claims came across as buffoonish rather than convincing.* > buffoon (n)



- 11.45** **undeterred** (adj) /ˌʌndɪ'tɜːd/  
not put off from doing sth • *Undeterred by the slanderous accusations against her, she continued her campaign to expose the media mogul.*
- 11.46** **deranged** (adj) /dɪ'reɪndʒd/  
incapable of normal, rational thinking  
• *The accusations were so absurd that they appeared to be the product of a deranged mind.* > derangement (n)
- 11.47** **cement** (v) /sɪ'ment/  
make something, such as an agreement, stronger • *The treaty was drawn up to cement relations between the ruling powers after the war.* > cement (n)
- 11.48** **blackmail** (n) /'blækmeɪl/  
the crime of threatening to reveal information about sb unless they pay you to keep quiet  
• *Digging deep into the victim's past, the detective uncovered a web of corruption and blackmail involving respected figures.*  
> blackmail (v)
- 11.49** **excerpt** (n) /'eksɜːpt/  
a short part of a larger text, film, etc. • *He read a short excerpt from his new novel at the press conference.* > excerpt (v)
- 11.50** **exile** (n) /'eksʌɪl/  
the state of being forced to leave one's country to live elsewhere • *After the revolt, the royal family were sent into exile.* > exile (v)
- 11.51** **libel** (n) /'laɪbl/  
the act of publishing a statement about sb that is untrue and damaging to their reputation  
• *The newspaper produced evidence that their claims were actually true and not just libel.*  
> libel (v), libellous (adj)
- 11.52** **memoir** (n) /'memwɑː(r)/  
a personal written account of sb's life experience • *Not being literary minded, he hired a shadow writer to produce his best-selling memoirs.*
- 11.53** **obscurity** (n) /əb'skjuːərəti/  
the state of being long forgotten or unknown  
• *The actor rose from obscurity as a plumber to become an Oscar winner.* > obscure (adj), obscurely (adv)
- 11.54** **aristocracy** (n) /ˌæɪ'stɒkrəsi/  
the upper class • *The party claims to represent the working classes rather than the aristocracy.* > aristocrat (n), aristocratic (adj), aristocratically (adv)
- 11.55** **news outlet** (n) /njuːz 'aʊtlet/  
a source where news can be obtained • *Social media sites alone are not always reliable as news outlets as they tend to recycle the same old, often unfounded stories.*

- 11.56** **leak** (n) /liːk/  
the disclosure of secret information to the public • *The journalist went into hiding after admitting responsibility for the leak of top secret information to the media.* > leak (v), leaky (adj)
- 11.57** **discrete** (adj) /dɪ'skriːt/  
separate and distinct from others of the same kind • *Fiction can be divided into several discrete subgenres.* > discreteness (n)
- 11.58** **correspondent** (n) /ˌkɒrə'spɒndənt/  
a news reporter who covers a particular subject or region • *The public were horrified to learn of the torture of foreign correspondents at the front line.* > correspond (v), correspondence (n), corresponding (adj)

### Nouns: crimes

blackmail      libel      slander

### Nouns: people

aristocracy      persona  
conman      recluse  
correspondent      toddler  
paparazzo

- 11.59** **credible** (adj) /'kredəbl/  
believable • *Given her gentle public image, it did not seem credible that she could have been so cruel to her children.* > credit (v), credibility (n), credible (adv)  
👉 Opp: incredible
- 11.60** **immortal** (adj) /ɪ'mɔːtl/  
famous and likely to be remembered for a long time • *A toast was raised to the bard's immortal memory.* > immortalise (v), immortal (adj), immortality (n)
- 11.61** **fabled** (adj) /'feɪblɪd/  
legendary • *Our itinerary included a visit to the fabled Sanctuary of Eleusis.* > fable (n)
- 11.62** **Z-list** (adj) /'zedlɪst/  
indicating those who are only slightly famous  
• *Daytime TV is peppered with Z-list celebrities, known for nothing more than seasonal chat shows.*
- 11.63** **illustrious** (adj) /ɪ'lʌstriəs/  
renowned and greatly admired • *The awards ceremony was attended by illustrious guests from the world of literature.*
- 11.64** **limelight** (n) /'laɪmlaɪt/  
the focal point of publicity • *Patrick never enjoyed being in the limelight offstage.*

- 1.65 string** (n) /striŋ/  
a series of • *After a string of hits as a teenage star, he withdrew into obscurity.* > string (v)
- 11.66 the big time** (n) /ðə big taɪm/  
a successful point in a chosen career • *He never thought he would make the big time until he landed the part of the villain in a James Bond film.*
- 11.67 destined** (adj) /'destɪnd/  
having a certain, predetermined future • *Not fitting the image of the slim beautiful heroine, she was destined to play the dispensable victim and sundry supporting roles.* > destiny (n), destination (n)
- 11.68 banal** (adj) /bə'na:l/  
dull and unimportant • *Even the non-stop action with striking visual images and sound effects could not compensate for the banal dialogue and storyline.* > banality (n)
- 11.69 stardom** (n) /'stɑ:dəm/  
the state of being famous as a performer • *As a child actress in E.T., Drew seemed destined for stardom.*
- 11.70 one-hit wonder** (n) /wʌn hɪt 'wʌndə(r)/  
sb who makes one successful piece of music or performance but no others thereafter • *The band produced a catchy tune that stormed the charts in the 80s, but it was just a one-hit wonder.*
- 11.71 discernible** (adj) /dɪ'sɜ:nəbl/  
that can be discerned or recognised • *There was no discernible difference between the two brands.* > discern (v), discernibly (adv)
- 11.72 high-end** (adj) /haɪ end/  
high-class and expensive • *Judging from their prices, the clothes are obviously aimed at the high-end market.*
- 11.73 be at odds** (expr) /bi: æt ɒdz/  
be in disagreement • *The films gushing opening reviews were completely at odds with the reactions from the bored audience.*
- 11.74 persona** (n) /pə'səʊnə/  
the traits of a person's character as shown to others • *His public persona was a dreadful façade, designed to disguise his heartless self.*
- 11.75 be in good/bad taste** (expr) /bi: ɪn gʊd/bæd teɪst/  
be appropriate and inoffensive / be inappropriate and offensive • *We were unimpressed as most of his jokes were in very bad taste.*
- 11.76 bogus** (adj) /'bəʊgəs/  
false and pretending to be genuine • *Nobody believed the bogus report about the discovery of a giant's bones.*

- 11.77 abuzz** (adj) /æ'bʌz/  
filled with constant noise, excitement, etc. • *The media was abuzz with rumours of their divorce.*
- 11.78 upwards of** (prep) /'ʌpwədz əv/  
more than • *Upwards of a million copies of their album have been sold around the world.*
- 11.79 over the top** (expr) /əʊvə(r) ðə tɒp/  
exaggerated • *Her accent was completely over the top and destroyed an otherwise enjoyable play.*
- 11.80 aspiring** (adj) /ə'spaɪərɪŋ/  
hoping to do or become sth • *Dozens of aspiring young hopefuls applied to audition for the role.* > aspire (v), aspiration (n)
- 11.81 in the name of sth** (expr) /ɪn ðə neɪm əv 'sʌmθɪŋ/  
in order to be or achieve sth; for the sake of • *How many hours do you expect to work in the name of success?*
- 11.82 partial** (adj) /'pa:ʃl/  
subjective; showing support in favour of one side of sth • *His side of the story is definitely partial as he knows the suspect.* > partiality (n), partially (adv)  
☞ Opp: impartial
- 11.83 disseminate** (v) /dɪ'semɪneɪt/  
distribute or spread news, etc. • *The dictator used the online news channel to disseminate propaganda.* > dissemination (n)

## Grammar pages 161-162-163

- 11.84 there's no accounting for taste** (expr) /ðeəz nəʊ ə'kaʊntɪŋ fə teɪst/  
used to show you do not agree with sb's choice; there's no way to explain why people like different things, especially those that seem unappealing • *I can't understand why she feels the need to have tattoos – there's no accounting for taste.*
- 11.85 the proof of the pudding (is in the eating)** (expr) /ðə pruf əv ðə 'pu:ɪdɪŋ (ɪz ɪn ðə 'i:tɪŋ)/  
you can only judge sth by personal experience, not from theory • *The book doesn't sound worth reading, but the proof of the pudding is in the eating, so I'll give it a go.*
- 11.86 reprimand** (v) /'reprɪmaɪnd/  
officially tell sb off for doing sth • *Students were reprimanded for using Instagram during the class.* > reprimand (n)
- 11.87 speculate** (v) /'spekjuleɪt/  
make a judgement based on an educated guess or assumption • *We could only speculate as to whether the takeover rumours were true until we heard more.* > speculation (n)

- 11.88 toddler** (n) /'tɒdlə(r)/  
a child who has just learnt to walk and moves unsteadily • *A small group of toddlers played with their toys as their nursery teachers kept a watchful eye on them.* > toddle (v)
- 11.89 fluff your lines** (expr) /flʌf jɔː laɪnz/  
make a mistake when you are reciting a script  
• *The director made them rerecord the scene where the leading actor fluffed his lines.*
- 11.90 flattering** (adj) /'flætərɪŋ/  
that makes sb/sth appear more attractive  
• *White is not the most flattering colour to match your pale complexion; it makes you look tired and grey.* > flatter (v), flattery (n)  
📖 Opp: unflattering
- 11.91 leap** (n) /li:p/  
a significant change or improvement • *We've witnessed a huge leap in sales since we ran the TV ad.* > leap (v)
- 11.92 utter** (v) /ʌtə(r)/  
say sth • *He listened patiently, without uttering a word until his son finished making his excuses.* > utterance (n), utter (adj), utterly (adv)
- 11.93 mishear** (v) /,mɪs'hiə(r)/  
misunderstand sth you hear which sounded like sth else • *I was sure she said her name was Mabel, but I must have misheard her.*
- 11.94 scrutinise** (v) /'skruːtənaɪz/  
examine sth closely • *The judges scrutinised the photo for signs of digital enhancement.* > scrutiny (n)
- 11.95 transmission** (n) /træns'mɪʃn/  
the act of broadcasting information or other data • *Signal fires were often used for the transmission of news across the ancient world.* > transmit (v), transmitter (n)

### Expressions

be at odds  
be in good/bad taste  
drive sth home  
fluff your lines  
fly on the wall  
have it both ways  
in the name of sth  
over the top  
play to the camera  
sb's/sth's days are numbered  
scratch the surface  
strike a chord  
the proof of the pudding (is in the eating)  
there's no accounting for taste  
warts and all

## Listening

page 164

- 11.96 dumb sth down** (phr v) /dʌm 'sʌmθɪŋ daʊn/  
make sth less challenging • *The plot of the film had been dumbed down in the remake.*
- 11.97 warts and all** (expr) /wɔːts ənd ɔːl/  
including imperfections • *She promised to love him as he was, warts and all.*
- 11.98 play to the camera** (expr) /pleɪ tə ðə 'kæməɾæ/  
act differently in the presence of cameras  
• *He's normally so shy, but when he gets hold of a microphone, he can certainly play to the camera.*
- 11.99 unscripted** (adj) /ʌn'skɪptɪd/  
without a plan • *Their apparently random street interviews were not completely unscripted as volunteers had been selected in advance.*
- 11.100 cringeworthy** (adj) /'krɪndʒwɜːði/  
causing embarrassment or upset • *The film's title is cringeworthy, as was most of the inane dialogue.* > cringe (v), cringe (n)
- 11.101 misnomer** (n) /,mɪs'nəʊmə(r)/  
an inappropriate or misleading name  
• *'Seafront hotel' was bit of a misnomer since it was five miles from the shore.*
- 11.102 humiliate** (v) /hjuː'mɪliət/  
make sb feel stupid or humble • *Even though Ted knew his friend was wrong, he didn't want to humiliate him by pointing it out in front of others.* > humiliation (n), humility (n), humiliating (adj)

### Verbs

cement	reprimand
channel	scrutinise
convict	skyrocket
decimate	speculate
delve into sth	spiral
dumb sth down	stalk
glean	stumble
humiliate	unfold
lampoon	unleash
mishear	utter
ponder	

## Speaking

page 165

- 11.103 memorabilia** (n) /,memə'reɪbiliə/  
a collection of old things that remind sb of sth/sb which they are connected with  
• *His entire room was filled with childhood memorabilia, giving the impression that he could be described as a 'kidult'.* > memorable (adj), memorably (adv)

- 11.104 convention** (n) /kən'venʃn/  
a large meeting of people involved with a common field • *Hundreds of delegates attended the sales convention.* > convene (v), conventional (adj), conventionally (adv)

### Adjectives

archival	fabled	reminiscent
aspiring	flattering	seedier
banal	gripping	sheer
bogus	hard-hitting	stardom
buffoonish	high-end	superficial
compliant	illustrious	symbolic
credible	immortal	undeterred
cringeworthy	insatiable	unflattering
deranged	mesmerising	unscripted
destined	partial	Z-list
discernible	poignant	

- 11.114 biopic** (n) /'baɪəpɪk/  
a biographical film • *Meryl Streep was chosen for the leading role in the biopic about the life of Margaret Thatcher.*

- 11.115 glean** (v) /gliːn/  
find information, with difficulty, from a variety of limited sources • *From what we are able to glean from historic accounts, he must have been an important figure.*

- 11.116 channel** (v) /'tʃænl/  
direct sth towards a particular aspect or area, etc. • *He channelled all his energy into his music.* > channel (n)

### Adverbs

emphatically	meteorically
impartially	proverbially

## Writing

pages 166-167

- 11.105 mesmerising** (adj) /'mezməraɪzɪŋ/  
hypnotic; having a strongly attractive quality that holds sb's attention • *The sound effects were utterly mesmerising.* > mesmerise (v)
- 11.106 meteorically** (adv) /,mɪtɪ'ɒrɪkəli/  
in a rapidly developing way • *She rose meteorically to the halls of fame.* > meteoric (adj)
- 11.107 unfold** (v) /ʌn'fəʊld/  
develop • *As the plot unfolds, we realise that all is not as bright as it seems.*
- 11.108 unleash** (v) /ʌn'liːʃ/  
release • *The fans unleashed their disappointment with offensive chants.*
- 11.109 archival** (adj) /ɑː'kaɪvəl/  
retrieved from old archives • *We found some old views of the area as it was 100 years ago among some archival photo in the library.* > archive (n)
- 11.110 footage** (n) /'fʊtɪdʒ/  
part of a film showing an event • *We found some old footage of the band's performance on YouTube.*
- 11.111 indictment** (n) /ɪn'daɪtmənt/  
an indication of sth negative • *The need for food banks is a sad indictment of our society.* > indict (v), indictable (adj)
- 11.112 spiral** (v) /'spaɪrəl/  
increase rapidly • *The economy has been spiralling downward for years.* > spiral (n), spiral (adj)
- 11.113 ponder** (v) /'pɒndə(r)/  
consider slowly • *He pondered the question for a moment before replying.* > ponderous (adj), ponderously (adv)

## Video 11: A Polar Picture

page 168

- 11.117 carcass** (n) /'kɑːkəs/  
the dead body of an animal • *The carcass of a fox lay by the roadside.*
- 11.118 sheer** (adj) /ʃɪə(r)/  
absolute; used to emphasise the size or amount of sth • *It was sheer folly to attempt the expedition alone.* > sheer (v), sheer (adv)
- 11.119 reminiscent** (adj) /,remɪ'nɪsnt/  
that reminds you of sth • *The villagers took part in ritual dances reminiscent of years gone by.* > reminiscence (n)

### Other nouns

adrenaline	hint	perception
biopic	indictment	scoop
bureau	leak	scourge
carcass	leap	stardom
convention	limelight	string
door	memoir	subgenre
stepping	memorabilia	telephoto
entity	news outlet	lens
excerpt	obscurity	the big time
exile	one-hit	transmission
footage	wonder	
fringe	peek	



# 12 Culture Shock

page 169

- 12.1 conical** (adj) /'kɒnɪkl/  
shaped like a cone • *The Apache tents have a conical shape with a gap at the top for smoke to come out.* > cone (n), conically (adv)
- 12.2 wet market** (n) /wet 'mɑːkɪt/  
a market selling fresh meat and produce, and not durable goods such as cloth and electronics • *Lee sold his goats at the wet market.*

## Reading

pages 170-171

- 12.3 sophistication** (n) /səˌfɪstɪ'keɪʃn/  
the quality of having a lot of experience and knowledge of the culture and other socially important issues • *Having a well-stocked bookcase gave the room an atmosphere of sophistication.* > sophisticate (n), sophisticated (adj)
- 12.4 worldliness** (n) /'wɜːldlɪnəs/  
the quality of having a lot of life experience and thus being broad-minded • *Having been brought up by German parents in Asia, Kim had an air of worldliness in the eyes of her English colleagues.* > worldly (adj)
- 12.5 establishment** (n) /ɪ'stæblɪʃmənt/  
a business or other organization, or the place where an organization operates • *The university is a well-respected establishment.* > establish (v), established (adj)
- 12.6 platter** (n) /'plætə(r)/  
a large flat serving dish • *The restaurateur brought a huge platter of starters before the main meal.*
- 12.7 culinary** (adj) /'kʌlɪnəri/  
related to cookery • *He participate in a reality show to present his culinary skills.*
- 12.8 yield** (v) /jiːld/  
provide • *Our trees yield several kilos of olives annually.* > yield (n)
- 12.9 domesticate** (v) /də'mestɪkeɪt/  
begin cultivating a plant for human use • *Domesticating a stray cat can be a difficult task lasting several months.* > domestication (n), domesticated (adj)
- 12.10 lineage** (n) /'lɪniːdʒ/  
ancestry • *Judging from his clothes, he appeared to be of noble lineage.*

- 12.11 taxonomy** (n) /tæk'sɒnəmi/  
the branch of science dealing with the classification of things • *Chromosomes are useful in the taxonomy of living things.* > taxonomist (n), taxonomic (adj)
- 12.12 derivative** (n) /dɪ'rɪvətɪv/  
sth which is based on sth else • *Certain products which sold as 'chocolate' in other countries are referred to as 'chocolate derivatives' in Italy.* > derive (v), derivate (adj)
- 12.13 hieroglyph** (n) /'haɪərəɡlɪf/  
an ancient Egyptian symbol used to represent a word, sound or syllable • *Archaeologists have managed to decipher the meaning of the Egyptian hieroglyphs on the wall of the king's tomb.* > hieroglyphics (n), hieroglyphic (adj)
- 12.14 rudimentary** (adj) /ruːdɪ'mentri/  
basic; undeveloped • *I have only a rudimentary knowledge of Polish – just enough to utter polite responses.* > rudiments (n)
- 12.15 ferment** (v) /fə'ment/  
cause sth to undergo a chemical change through the action of yeast or bacteria • *Most fruits and some vegetables can be fermented to make wine.* > fermentation (n)
- 12.16 vessel** (n) /'vesl/  
a container • *They used coconut shells as drinking vessels to serve the cocktails.*
- 12.17 tribute** (n) /'trɪbjʊt/  
a gift from one country or tribe to another as a peace offering • *In agricultural societies, peasants had to pay tribute to the ruling power to defend their land from enemies.* > tributary (adj)
- 12.18 ruse** (n) /ruːz/  
a trick used to obtain sth by cheating • *So-called discount offers are simply a ruse to attract more customers.*
- 12.19 counterfeit** (adj) /'kaʊntəfɪt/  
sth that has been made to look like a genuine article • *Keith was horrified when the shopkeeper refused to accept the €100 note upon discovering that it was counterfeit.*
- 12.20 worthless** (adj) /'wɜːθləs/  
not worth anything; useless • *The shares had become worthless by the time the company went bankrupt.* > worth (n), worthy (adj)
- 12.21 hull** (n) /hʌl/  
the leafy outer covering of a seed or plant; husk • *She deftly scooped out the flesh of the avocado from its hull.*

- 12.22 symbolically** (adv) /sɪm'bɒlɪkli/  
in a symbolic way; as a symbol • *The statue symbolically represented the nation's independence.* > symbolise (v), symbolism (n), symbolic (adj)
- 12.23 etymology** (n) /ˌetɪ'mɒlədʒi/  
the origin of a word and its meaning • *The history and etymology of many English words dates back to ancient Greek.* > etymologist (n)
- 12.24 hybrid** (n) /'haɪbrɪd/  
sth that is produced by a blend of two or more things • *The fruit of the tree was a hybrid of an apple and a pear.* > hybrid (adj)
- 12.25 alkali** (n) /'ælkəlaɪ/  
a chemical substance which causes acids to neutralise or effervesce • *As it is an alkali, adding soda to citrus fruit juice will cause it to effervesce.* > alkalise (v), alkaline (adj)
- 12.26 pungent** (adj) /'pʌndʒənt/  
strong smelling or tasting • *The pungent aroma of orange blossoms filled the night air.* > pungency (n), pungently (adv)
- 12.27 lavender** (n) /'lævəndə(r)/  
a sweet-scented plant with pale purple flowers • *Before packing away her winter woollies, she leaves small bunches of lavender to keep them fresh and ward off insects.*
- 12.28 divine** (adj) /dɪ'vaɪn/  
connected with a god • *It was the divine right of kings to receive tributes from their subjects.* > divinity (n), divinely (adv)
- 12.29 palatable** (adj) /'pælətəbl/  
with a pleasant taste • *The murky brown soup was, fortunately, much more palatable than it looked; in fact it was quite tasty.* > palate (n)
- 12.30 fraudulent** (adj) /'frɔːdʒələnt/  
deceptively made to cheat sb, usually to make money • *The company was taken to court for fraudulent advertising.* > fraudulence (n), fraud (n), fraudulently (adv)

### Food-related words

#### Nouns

alkali	salt cellar	palatable
fare	vessel	pungent

#### Adjectives

#### Verbs

## Vocabulary pages 172-173-174

- 12.31 heritage** (n) /'herɪtɪdʒ/  
a country's history and long-standing traditions regarded as an integral part of its character • *The Olympic Games are a symbol of Greece's national heritage.* > heritable (adj)
- 12.32 mannerism** (n) /'mænərɪz(ə)m/  
a subconscious habit or way of behaving • *She has the annoying mannerism of constantly looking at her phone in the middle of a conversation.* > manner (n), manners (n), mannered (adj)
- 12.33 reluctant** (adj) /rɪ'lʌktənt/  
unwilling; not keen to do sth • *He was reluctant to discuss his wartime experience as it evoked painful memories.* > reluctance (n), reluctantly (adv)
- 12.34 age-old** (adj) /'eɪdʒ'əʊld/  
sth that has existed for many years; traditional • *The age-old tradition of bullfighting is fast losing its popularity in Spain.*
- 12.35 quaint** (adj) /kweɪnt/  
attractive with an old-worldly quality • *The upbeat resort was once a quaint fishing village on the coast of Cornwall.* > quaintness (n), quaintly (adv)
- 12.36 old-time** (adj) /'əʊld'taɪm/  
associated with an earlier period • *His great-grandfather was a banjo player in an old-time music hall.* > old-timer (n)
- 12.37 ever-present** (adj) /'evə 'preznt/  
constantly remaining • *Around the souk, the ever-present aroma of spices filled the air.*
- 12.38 long-standing** (adj) /lɒŋ 'stændɪŋ/  
that has existed for many years • *It is a long-standing Hawaiian tradition to offer visitors a garland of flowers as a greeting.*
- 12.39 paternal** (adj) /pə'tɜːnl/  
from the father's side of the family • *Nancy's paternal grandmother comes from Sparta.* > paternity (n), paternally (adv)
- 12.40 nomadic** (adj) /nəʊ'mædɪk/  
with a lifestyle that involves moving as a group from place to place • *Many Bedouins have now abandoned their nomadic lifestyle in favour of urban life.* > nomad (n)
- 12.41 time-honoured** (adj) /taɪm 'hɒnəd/  
respected as having existed for many years • *In the time-honoured tradition, the flame was carried all the way from Olympia around the world to the venue of the Games.*

## Adjectives for traditions

age-old	old-time
ever-present	quaint
long-standing	time-honoured
nomadic	

## Things from the past

dowry	memorial
hieroglyph	relic
heirloom	residue
heritage	the Renaissance
legacy	vestige

- 12.42 the Renaissance** (n) /ðə rɪ'neɪsəns/  
the period during the 14th to 16th centuries when art and literature were influenced by a revived interest in classical ancient Greek and Roman culture • *The Renaissance began in Florence with the influx of Greek scholars fleeing the Ottoman conquest.*
- 12.43 dowry** (n) /'daʊəri/  
the custom of giving money or property to a woman or her husband by the woman's family to support her when she marries  
• *Until a couple of centuries ago, dowries were still commonly provided to a husband by his bride's father in western society.*
- 12.44 legacy** (n) /'legəsi/  
a situation that is a result of past actions or events • *We are now having to endure the legacy left by the consumerist era of the 80s and 90s.* > legacy (adj)
- 12.45 vestige** (n) /'vestɪdʒ/  
a small trace of sth that has remained over time • *The castle ruins remain as the last vestige of 13th century Frankish rule.*  
> vestigial (adj)
- 12.46 residue** (n) /'rezɪdʒuː/  
a small amount of a substance left after a process is complete • *They were obviously tea drinkers, from the brown residue around the inside of their cups.* > residual (adj)
- 12.47 heirloom** (n) /'eəluːm/  
an object that has been handed down the generations in a family • *This old teapot is a family heirloom which belonged to my great-aunt's mother.* > heir (n), heiress (n), heirloom (adj)
- 12.48 relic** (n) /'reɪlɪk/  
an object or custom, etc. surviving from the past • *The display case contained pieces of Bronze Age kitchenware and other such relics.*

- 12.49 chronicle** (n) /'krɒnɪkl/  
a written account of events in chronological order • *Pausanias the traveller's chronicles have shed much light on the history of ancient Greece up to the 2nd century AD.* > chronicle (v), chronicler (n)
- 12.50 memorial** (n) /mə'mɔːriəl/  
sth built to remember a famous historic event or figure • *It is customary for people to lay wreaths around the war memorial to honour the victims of war on Remembrance Day.* > memorial (adj)
- 12.51 revival** (n) /rɪ'vaɪvl/  
the process of regaining strength or sth's improving prospects • *The tourist industry is beginning to show some signs of revival after years of recession.* > revive (v)
- 12.52 recite** (v) /rɪ'saɪt/  
say sth out loud which you have learnt by heart, e.g. a poem or piece of prose • *On 25th January, Scots get together to celebrate the birthday of their national poet, Robert Burns, by reciting some of his best-loved works whilst enjoying traditional food and drinks.*  
> recitation (n), recital (n), recitative (adj)
- 12.53 oral** (adj) /'ɔːrəl/  
spoken • *Angela did very well in the oral exam and turned the whole thing into a natural conversation with the examiner, gaining top marks for speaking fluently.* > oral (n), orally (adv)
- 12.54 vocal** (adj) /'vəʊkəl/  
loudly voicing your opinions; generally connected with the voice • *The proposal to do away with the national holiday met with resistance from a vocal majority.* > vocal (n), vocally (adv)
- 12.55 aural** (adj) /'ɔːrəl/  
generally connected with hearing • *We did a listening comprehension test to measure our aural skills.* > aurally (adv)
- 12.56 phonetic** (adj) /fə'netɪk/  
using symbols from a special alphabet to denote different sounds; generally connected with sounds • *This book includes phonetic symbols to assist in pronunciation.*  
> phonetics (n), phonetically (adv)

## Speaking & listening adjectives

oral	aural
vocal	phonetic

- 12.57 deviance** (n) /'diːviəns/  
an act of doing sth differently from the normal way • *The tribe have retained their old ways and are resistant to any deviance from their social norms.* > deviate (v), deviant (n), deviant (adj), deviantly (adv)

- 12.58 primitive** (adj) /'prɪmətɪv/  
simple and unsophisticated • *Some native Australian animals, including the platypus and marsupials, are among the most primitive species in existence.* > primitively (adv)
- 12.59 sit tight** (expr) /sɪt taɪt/  
stay where you are and wait or don't move  
• *The train had just pulled out of the station, so all we could do was sit tight and wait for the next one.*
- 12.60 hold fast** (expr) /həʊld fæst/  
keep believing in sth despite them being questioned or threatened • *Despite a series of setbacks, he held fast to his original business plan until the company eventually took off.*
- 12.61 esteemed** (adj) /ɪ'stiːmd/  
highly regarded or respected • *The esteemed professor was our guest speaker at the medical convention.* > esteem (n)
- 12.62 stay put** (expr) /steɪ pʊt/  
stay where you are • *Though many of their compatriots had emigrated due to the financial crisis, they decided to stay put and try to weather the storm.*
- 12.63 integrate** (v) /'ɪntɪɡreɪt/  
mix well and become part of a social group  
• *It takes a couple of generations for foreign incomers to become truly integrated in another culture.* > integration (n), integral (adj), integrally (adv)
- 12.64 defy** (v) /dɪ'faɪ/  
refuse to obey an order; go against a rule  
• *Oliver did not dare to defy Fagin, for fear of being beaten.* > defiance (n), defiant (adj), defiantly (adv)
- 12.65 ostracise** (v) /'ɒstrəsaɪz/  
exclude sb from a social group and refuse to converse with them • *He was ostracised by the village community for questioning their religious beliefs.* > ostracism (n)
- 12.66 reverent** (adj) /'revərənt/  
respectful • *A reverent silence fell as the priest entered the temple.* > revere (v), reverence (n), reverently (adv)  
📖 Opp: irreverent
- 12.67 veil** (n) /veɪl/  
a covering worn to conceal the face • *The bride wore a traditional lace veil over her face.*  
> veil (v), veiled (adj)
- 12.68 cremate** (v) /krə'meɪt/  
burn a corpse, usually as part of a funeral ceremony • *As a dying wish, the angler requested that his body was to be cremated and the ashes scattered in the river.*  
> cremation (n), crematorium (n)
- 12.69 adorn** (v) /ə'dɔːn/  
decorate • *The temple was adorned with scented flowers and colourful statues.*  
> adornment (n)
- 12.70 frond** (n) /frɒnd/  
a long thin leaf • *Through the palm fronds, we could make out a cruise ship on the horizon.*
- 12.71 sane** (adj) /seɪn/  
logical; of sound mind • *In my view, anyone who takes such foolhardy risks in the name of sport is not entirely sane.* > sanity (n)  
📖 Opp: insane
- 12.72 undercurrent** (n) /'ʌndəˈkʌrənt/  
a hidden feeling which has a noticeable effect on sth • *An undercurrent of envy prevented them from developing a closer relationship.*
- 12.73 accomplishment** (n) /ə'kʌmplɪʃmənt/  
achievement • *The stadium was one of the architects greatest accomplishments.*  
> accomplish (v), accomplished (adj)
- 12.74 blow your own trumpet** (expr) /bləʊ ʃɔː tʌn 'trʌmp, pət/  
boast about your success • *Though Steve has never been one to blow his own trumpet, he is rather proud of winning the trophy for Tang Soo Do.*
- 12.75 decipher** (v) /dɪ'saɪfə(r)/  
discover the meaning of sth difficult to understand • *He deciphered the enemy's signal code just in time to help plan a counter attack.* > decipherable (adj)
- 12.76 fondness** (n) /'fɒndnəs/  
affection • *The British fondness for a nice cup of tea is a legacy of their empirical past.*  
> fond (adj), fondly (adv)
- 12.77 fit** (n) /fɪt/  
a short-lasting uncontrollable state of an extreme emotion, e.g. laughter, crying, etc.  
• *The class burst into fits of laughter at the English teacher's attempts to speak Greek.*
- 12.78 bout** (n) /baʊt/  
a short period of sth, especially illness  
• *A bout of gastric flu caused her to lose quite a bit of weight.*

### Expressions

blow your own trumpet  
hold fast  
sit tight  
stay put



# Grammar

pages 175-176-177

- 12.79 blight** (n) /blaɪt/  
a disease that destroys a crop; sth that affects sth/sb badly • *The blight of fungus destroyed the vines before the grapes had ripened.*  
➤ blight (v)
- 12.80 creole** (adj) /'kri:əʊl/  
the language of sb of mixed racial roots, especially in the southern states of the USA and West Indies • *On our visit to the West Indies, we adored the spicy creole cuisine, but could not understand much of the creole language.*
- 12.81 karavai** (n) /kərə'e'vɑɪ/  
a round loaf of traditional Russian bread  
• *Karavai is a type of decorated bread, traditionally served at Russian weddings to symbolise fertility.*
- 12.82 salt cellar** (n) /sɔlt 'selə(r)/  
a small container which salt is poured  
• *Could you pass the salt cellar and pepper pot please? This sauce needs a little seasoning.*
- 12.83 embroidered** (adj) /ɪm'brɔɪdəd/  
decorated with patterns made by stitching with coloured threads • *The woman at the market stall tried to persuade us to buy her embroidered tablecloths.* ➤ embroider (v), embroidery (n)
- 12.84 folklore** (n) /'fəʊklɔ:(r)/  
the traditional stories of a country • *There's usual a moral ending in tales from ancient folklore.*

## Nouns

Feelings & Actions	
accomplishment	fondness
deviance	installation
endurance	mannerism
establishment	ruse
fit	sophistication
	worldliness

# Listening

page 178

- 12.85 indescribable** (adj) /,ɪndɪ'skraɪbəbl/  
so unusual that sth cannot be described  
• *Terrorism in this country caused indescribable suffering to its people.*  
📎 Opp: describable

# Speaking

page 179

- 12.86 long-winded** (adj) /lɒŋ 'wɪndɪd/  
that goes into a lot of detail and takes too long to get to the point • *Although some of her points were valid, her speech about racial inequality was too long-winded.*
- 12.87 installation** (n) /,ɪnstə'leɪʃn/  
the act of placing sth in a position so that it can be used • *The installation of the new heating system only took a couple of days.* ➤ install (v)

# Writing

pages 180-181

- 12.88 teething problems** (n) /'ti:ðɪŋ 'prɒbləms/  
problems faced in the initial stages of doing sth new • *Opening a restaurant was a good idea, but we faced a number of teething problems before getting off the ground.*
- 12.89 ordinarily** (adv) /'ɔ:dnrəli/  
usually; normally • *Ordinarily, he never attends religious ceremonies, but he made an exception out of respect to his wife's family.*  
➤ ordinary (adj)
- 12.90 gem** (n) /dʒem/  
sth with a uniquely desirable quality • *The peninsula is a hidden gem, with unspoilt beaches and towering cliffs.*
- 12.91 haunt** (n) /haʊnt/  
a place that many people visit • *Visiting his old university campus, Dad took me round some of his old haunts in the city.* ➤ haunt (v), haunted (adj)
- 12.92 veritable** (adj) /'verɪtəbl/  
used to emphasise or qualify a metaphor or exaggeration • *The dinner was a veritable disaster; everything went wrong that could go wrong!*
- 12.93 fare** (n) /feə(r)/  
produce on sale, especially food • *As we passed each stall, we were offered samples of the traditional fare on sale.*
- 12.94 intoxicating** (adj) /ɪn'tɒksɪkeɪtɪŋ/  
making you feel excited as though overpowered • *The intoxicating smell of cooking filled the air.* ➤ intoxicate (v), intoxication (n)
- 12.95 unqualified** (adj) /,ʌn'kwɒlɪfaɪd/  
complete • *The fundraiser was an unqualified success.*
- 12.96 gleefully** (adv) /'gli:fəli/  
happily; in a very pleased way • *She gleefully agreed to prepare the food for the wedding feast.* ➤ glee (n), gleeful (adj)

# Video 12: Rite of Passage

page 182

- 12.97 rite of passage** (n) /raɪt əv 'pæsədʒ/  
a traditional ritual that symbolises an important stage in sb's life • *The mother prepared her daughter's gown for her rite of passage upon her coming of age.*
- 12.98 clay** (n) /kleɪ/  
a kind of soft mud used in making ceramic dishes • *The potter skilfully moulded the clay into a gorgeous vase, then placed it in the kiln to harden.*
- 12.99 endurance** (n) /ɪn'dʒʊərəns/  
the ability to withstand great difficulty  
• *The ordeal put the girls through both physical and psychological endurance.*  
> endure (v)

- 12.100 womanhood** (n) /'wʊmənɦʊd/  
the state of being a woman • *The ceremony denoted that the girls had reached womanhood and were ready to find a husband.*
- 12.101 tepee** (n) /'ti:pi:/  
a large conical tent traditional to Native Americans in the past • *Most Native Americans now live in towns or cities and few would contemplate the prospect of a nomadic life in a tepee that their ancestors had.*

## Other nouns

blight	gem	tribute
bout	lavender	undercurrent
clay	lineage	wet market
derivative	revival	womanhood
etymology	taxonomy	